

B. Answer the following questions.

- Describe the relationship between two pieces of information in a text. وضع العلاقة بين معلومتين في النص.

- Why shouldn't you tell anyone your personal information ?

- To stay safe online.

- Make logical inferences from the text. ضع استنتاجات منطقية في النص.

A • Infer استنتج the instructions you should follow to stay safe online. اذكر اثنين.

• Don't make friends with people you don't know.

• Don't send photos to people you don't know.

B • What will happen if we answer a video call from someone we don't know ?

* We won't be safe online.

- Summarize the key supporting details and ideas in the text. لخص التفاصيل والأفكار الداعمة في النص.

- Summarize the main idea of the text.

* How to stay safe online.

Pop Quiz

بعد قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع داخل كتاب الشرح.

للمزيد من التدريب على سؤال قطعة الفهم في ورقة الامتحان



Contents

Theme 3

My society

Unit 7 : Homes in Egypt _____ 15

Unit 8 : At the doctor's _____ 57

Unit 9 : My favorite animal _____ 103

Review 3 _____ 147

Non-Fiction Reader

Are There Endangered Animals in Egypt? _ 150



Theme 4

Being responsible

Unit 10 : Let's visit Egypt _____ 154

Unit 11 : Getting out in the fresh air _ 194

Unit 12 : Vacations _____ 231

Review 4 _____ 276

Fiction Reader

A Fantastic Family Adventure _____ 279



Theme 3

My society



Unit 7

Homes in Egypt

المنازل في مصر



للتقान الوحدة

• التقييمات الشهرية في كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية.
• Dictation في نهاية الوحدة.

• Test your skills في نهاية الوحدة.
• Reading and Writing Skill في نهاية الوحدة.

• تدريبات للأهر الشريف في نهاية الكتاب.

Aims of unit seven :

In this unit I will

- listen, read, research, and write about Egyptian homes now and in Ancient Egypt.
- أستمع، أقرأ، أبحث، وأكتب عن منازل المصريين الآن وفي مصر القديمة.
- talk about the home and furniture.
- أتحدث عن المنازل المصرية.
- read, understand, and listen to a short dialog about different homes.
- أقرأ، أفهم، وأستمع إلى محادثة قصيرة عن المنازل المختلفة.

الأهداف العامة للوحدة السابعة :

في هذه الوحدة سوف.....

- understand and use the simple past to talk about past events.
- أفهم وأستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط للتحدث عن أحداث ماضية.
- learn how to say double vowels.
- أتعلم كيف أقول زوج من الحروف المتحركة.
- write a simple blog about an unusual home.
- أكتب مدونة بسيطة عن منزل غير تقليدي.
- research and make a presentation about an Ancient Egyptian home.
- أبحث وأقوم بمرض تقديمي عن المنزل المصري القديم.

Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

★ Look, listen and repeat. انظر، استمع وردد.



elevator مصعد



closet خزانة



cushion وسادة



oven فرن



balcony شرفة



armchair كرسي ذو ذراعين



television تليفزيون



shower دُش

Extra vocabulary

welcome	مرحبًا	apartment	شقة سكنية
gift	هدية	kitchen	مطبخ
space	مساحة/فراغ	living room	حجرة معيشة
bedroom	حجرة النوم	traditional	تقليدي
fantastic	رائع	view	منظر طبيعي
modern	حديث	bathroom	حمام
closer	أقرب	old	قديم
lovely	جميل	new	جديد
easier	أسهل	mind map	خريطة ذهنية

Notes for parents

• Help your child look, listen to the words and repeat them.

In Ancient Egypt, mud bricks kept the inside of the house cool in hot weather. Small windows and vents on the roof let air into the house. في مصر القديمة، كان الطوب اللبن يحافظ على درجة الحرارة داخل المنزل بحيث تكون معتدلة عندما يكون الجو حار. كانت تسمح النوافذ الصغيرة وفتحات التهوية الموجودة في السطح بدخول الهواء إلى المنزل.

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present

cook يطبخ
like يحب
prefer يفضل
live يعيش
describe يصف

Past

cooked
liked
preferred
lived
described

Irregular

Present

come يأتي
have/has يمتلك
say يقول
see يرى
get يحصل على

Past

came
had
said
saw
got

Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

- Come in ! ادخل ! / تفضل بالدخول !
- How long ... ? كم المدة ... ؟
- since I was born منذ ولدتى
- share ... with يشارك مع
- it's much bigger أكبر بكثير
- move to ينتقل إلى
- come and see تعالى لترى
- What's better about... ? ما الأفضل بخصوص ... ؟
- really big كبير حقًا
- a part of جزء من
- What about ... ? ماذا عن ... ؟
- as you can see كما ترى
- to cook in ليطبخ فى
- What a great view! يا له من منظر رائع!

★ Main points on listening and reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

- Fareeda prefers her new apartment. فريدة تفضل شقتها السكنية الجديدة.
- Fareeda's family lived in the old apartment for 12 years. كانت عائلة فريدة تعيش فى الشقة السكنية القديمة لمدة ١٢ سنة.
- Fareeda shares her bedroom with her sister. تتشارك فريدة مع أختها حجرة النوم.
- Dina likes the new apartment. دينا تحب الشقة السكنية الجديدة.
- The balcony is fantastic where you can see a great view! الشرفة رائعة حيث يمكنك رؤية منظر رائع!



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

يقوم التلميذ بأداء تدريب تلقائي على الكلمات السابقة بعد قراءتها

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.
اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- The helps us to go up to the 7th floor easily.
a. cushion b. kitchen c. elevator d. view
- We can see a great view from our
a. balcony b. oven c. shower d. closet
- My mom usually uses the to bake cakes.
a. oven b. television c. bedroom d. armchair
- We watch TV in our
a. bathroom b. kitchen c. living room d. closet



Listening and Reading

★ Listen, read and role-play. استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار.



Hi Dina, welcome to my new apartment! Come in!

مرحبًا دينا، مرحبًا بك في شقتي السكنية الجديدة! تفضل!



Thanks! Do you like living here?
شكرًا! هل تحبين المعيشة هنا؟



I love it! It's a great apartment!
I like this part of town and it's much bigger than our old apartment.

أنا أحبها! إنها شقة سكنية رائعة! أنا أحب هذه المنطقة من المدينة وهي أكبر بكثير من شقتنا السكنية القديمة.



How long did you live in your old apartment?

كم المدة التي قضيتها في شقتك السكنية القديمة؟



Twelve years, since I was born. Then my parents had to move to a new job, so we moved to a closer apartment.

اثنا عشر عامًا، منذ ولدتني. بعد ذلك اضطر والداي إلى الانتقال إلى عمل جديد، لذلك انتقلنا إلى شقة سكنية أقرب.



So, what's better about this new apartment?

إذًا، ما هو الأفضل في الشقة الجديدة؟



Come and see. The new kitchen is bigger, and the oven is more modern. My mom says it's much easier to cook in.

تعالى وانظري. المطبخ الجديد أكبر حجمًا، والفرن أحدث. تقول والدتي أنه أكثر سهولة في استخدامه عند الطهي.



Very nice. And this is the living room?

لطيف جدًا. وهل هذه هي غرفة المعيشة؟



Yes, as you can see, there's more space so we can have a bigger television. Look at these traditional cushions.

نعم، كما ترى، هناك مساحة أكبر. انظري لتلك الوسائد التقليدية. لقد كانوا هدية من جدتي.



Oh, yes! What about the bedrooms?

أوه، حقًا! ماذا عن غرف النوم؟



We have three bedrooms now. I share a room with my sister, Amira, but our bedroom is really big. And we have two bathrooms.

لدينا ثلاث غرف نوم الآن. أنا أشارك أختي أميرة في الغرفة، لكن غرفة النوم الخاصة بنا كبيرة بالفعل، ولدينا اثنان من دورات المياه.



It's lovely! The balcony is fantastic too – what a great view!

هذا جميل! الشرفة رائعة أيضًا - ياله من منظر رائع!



Notes for parents

- Ask your child to choose the correct answer.
- Help your child listen to the dialog and let him/her say what he/she listens to correctly, then ask him/her to role-play it with his/her colleagues.
- اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة.
- ساعد طفلك في الاستماع إلى المحادثة ودعه يقول ما يسمعه بطريقة صحيحة، ثم اطلب منه أن يتبادل الأدوار مع زملائه.

General Exercises

on Lesson 1

نصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False). استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

- | | | |
|-----------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. Hana's family moved to a new apartment in Cairo. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 2. The new apartment is near the Pyramids. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3. There is only one bedroom in the new apartment. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4. Hana shares a room with her younger sister. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

2 Listen and complete. استمع واكمل.

- We live in a small
- There is one white in my bedroom.
- I have a wooden to study on it.
- You can see an amazing view from the

3 Read and match (A) with (B). اقرأ وصل العمود (A) بالعمود (B).

- | A | B |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| 1. How long did you | <input type="checkbox"/> a. big or small ? |
| 2. Where do | <input type="checkbox"/> b. from my aunt. |
| 3. Welcome to my | <input type="checkbox"/> c. a great view ! |
| 4. Is your house | <input type="checkbox"/> d. you live ? |
| 5. This bag is a gift | <input type="checkbox"/> e. live in Cairo ? |
| | <input type="checkbox"/> f. new apartment. |

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة.

- with - share - I - a room - my - brother.
.....
- in - Do - live - house - you - a big ?
.....
- likes - new - My - apartment - the - sister.
.....
- have - We - bedrooms - and - a kitchen - three.
.....

5 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي.

- i prefer living in a big apartment
.....
- Why are fareeda and Dina happy
.....

6 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

اكتب فقرة إنشائية مكونة من (٤٠) كلمة مستخدماً العناصر الإرشادية.

Your apartment

مجاب عنه
في نهاية
الكتاب

Guiding questions :

- What does your apartment look like ?
- Why do you like your apartment ?

My perfect room

Language Focus



Vocabulary

★ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Key vocabulary

desk	مكتب	dangerous	خطير
posters	ملصقات	chairs	كراسي
video games	ألعاب الفيديو	perfect	مثالي / نموذجي
smile	يتسم	reason	سبب
comfortable	مريح	make friends	يكون صداقات

Adjectives and opposites الصفات وعكسها

Adjectives

lucky	محظوظ
comfortable	مريح
safe	آمن
happy	سعيد
friendly	ودود
fair	عادل
kind	طيب / عطوف
usual	عادي

Opposites

unlucky	غير محظوظ
uncomfortable	غير مريح
unsafe	غير آمن
unhappy	غير سعيد
unfriendly	غير ودود
unfair	غير عادل
unkind	غير عطوف
unusual	غير عادي

★ Look, listen and read. انظر، استمع واقرأ.

I love my bedroom. I share it with my sister. On the right, there is my bed with a desk next to it. On the left, there is my sister's bed. In the middle of the room, there is an armchair with two cushions



Notes for parents

- Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.
- Help your child look, listen and read the text.

- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددهم.
- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر، يستمع ويفهم النص.

and a big closet. On the wall, there are lots of posters of animals.
- أنا أحب غرفة نومي. أشاركها مع أختي. على اليمين يوجد سريرى ومكتب بجواره. على اليسار هناك سرير أختي. يوجد فى منتصف الغرفة كرسي بذراعين مع وسادتين وخزانة كبيرة. يوجد على الحائط الكثير من ملصقات الحيوانات.

Language Focus

1 Use these phrases when telling your partner where things are :
تستخدم هذه العبارات لإخبار شريكك بأمكان الأشياء.

- On the right على اليمين
- On the left على اليسار
- In the middle of the room فى منتصف الغرفة
- On the wall على الحائط

2 un- = not

un- is a prefix means (not). "un-" هى بادئة تعنى "غير".

We add "un-" at the beginning of a word to get the opposite meaning.
نضع البادئة "un-" فى بداية الكلمة لإعطاء عكس المعنى.

Example مثال	Meaning المعنى
He looks un happy. هو يبدو غير سعيد.	He doesn't look happy. هو لا يبدو سعيد.

★ Read and identify. اقرأ وتعرف.

Words	Meanings
unfriendly	ليس لطيفاً مع شخص ما
uncomfortable	something that doesn't feel nice to sit on or wear on your body شئ لا يعطى إحساس جيد عند الجلوس عليه أو عند ارتداؤه على جسدك.

- Help your child learn how to tell his/her partner where things are. - ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كيف يخبره زميله عن أماكن الأشياء.
- Help your child learn about using the prefix "un-" to form the opposite. - ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن استخدام البادئة "un-" لتكوين عكس معنى بعض الكلمات.

unlucky	something bad happens to you without a reason شيء سيئ يحدث لك بدون سبب
unsafe	dangerous خطير
unhappy	sad حزين
unfair	something that happens that isn't morally right or fair شيء يحدث غير صحيح أو عادل أخلاقياً



Pop Quiz on Language Focus

يقوم التلميذ بأداء تدريب تلقائي لإتقان القواعد اللغوية

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- What does the prefix (un-) mean ?
a. not b. again c. wrong d. before
- What does the word "unsafe" mean
a. not able b. not open c. not safe d. not straight
- She was when she didn't get her birthday present.
a. unsafe b. unhappy c. safe d. happy
- You can find the box the right next to the table.
a. in b. on c. next d. under
- There's a table the middle of my room.
a. in b. at c. next d. out
- There's a poster the wall.
a. under b. on c. in d. of

2 Give the opposite of the words using the prefix 'un-' :

اعطى عكس الكلمات مستخدماً البادئة (un-).

- kind →
- fair →
- friendly →
- usual →
- comfortable →
- lucky →

Notes for parents

- Ask your child to choose the correct answer.
 - Ask your child to write the opposite of the given words using the prefix "un-".
- اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة.
اطلب من طفلك أن يكتب عكس المعنى للكلمات المعطاة باستخدام البادئة "un-".



Vocabulary

★ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Key vocabulary

scientist	عالم	local villagers	القرويين المحليين
research	بحث	frightened	خائف
family groups	مجموعات عائلية	howler monkey	القرود العواء (قرود أمريكية)
younger	أصغر سناً	path	طريق

Extra vocabulary

friendly	ودود	airplane	طائرة
suddenly	فجأة	frightening	مفزع / مخيف / مرعب
case	حقيبة	deep	عميق
garbage	مخلفات / قمامة	jungle	غابة
uncle	عم / خال	sculpture	تمثال
everywhere	في كل مكان	work	عمل
indeed	بالفعل	South America	جنوب أمريكا

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present	Past
start	بدأ
look	ينظر
miss	يفقد / يفوت
try	يحاول
smile	يتسّم
happen	يحدث
travel	يسافر
	started
	looked
	missed
	tried
	smiled
	happened
	traveled

Irregular

Present	Past
lose	يفقد / يخسر
sit	يجلس
leave	يترك / يغادر
go	يذهب
do	يفعل
tell	يخبر
know	يعرف
	lost
	sat
	left
	went
	did
	told
	knew

• Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

• ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددهم.

Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

• go back	يعود	• set out	انطلق
• interested in	مهتم بـ	• go forward	تقدم للأمام
• look for	يبحث عن	• nearby	بالقرب من
• carry ... away down to	يحمل بعيدًا إلى	• all over Egypt	فى كل أنحاء مصر
• come toward	يأتى باتجاه	• heavy rain	أمطار غزيرة

★ Main points on listening and reading texts نقاط هامة علي نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

- My uncle is a scientist. - عمى يكون عالِم.
- My uncle loves animals. - عمى يحب الحيوانات.
- He was interested in howler monkeys. - كان مهتم بقردة العواء.
- He wanted to do some research into their family groups. - أراد عمى أن يقوم ببعض الأبحاث عن المجموعات العائلية لقردة العواء.

★ Look and read. انظر واقرأ. Pop Quiz تدرب على 18 من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

My uncle is a **scientist**⁽¹⁾ and loves animals. When he was **younger**⁽²⁾, he traveled a lot in South America for work. He loved it there because the people were very **friendly**⁽³⁾ and helped him with his work. Then, about three years ago, something **frightening**⁽⁴⁾ happened to him and he was lucky he lived to tell me about it!



Howler monkeys in the jungle

Check Vocabulary

- (1) عالِم
- (2) أصغر سنًا
- (3) ودود
- (4) مخيف
- (5) قرد العواء
- (6) بحث

He was very interested in **howler monkeys**⁽⁵⁾ and wanted to do some **research**⁽⁶⁾ into their family groups. A local villager told him where there was a howler monkey family nearby and he was very

happy. But the villager also said, "Tomorrow, we are going to have a lot of rain so it could be unsafe."

My uncle set out to look for the howler monkey family and soon he was deep in the **jungle**⁽⁷⁾.

He could hear the monkeys and he looked up.

He knew he was very close to them. Then the rain started.

It was very heavy rain. Soon, there was water everywhere and he couldn't see the **path**⁽⁸⁾ to go forward or back. Suddenly, lots of water came toward him and carried him away down to the river. He was very **frightened**⁽⁹⁾. Suddenly, he saw a hand and someone was shouting. It was the villager. He took Uncle's hand and said, "Now you are **safe**⁽¹⁰⁾!" My uncle was very happy indeed!

Check Vocabulary

- (7) غابة
- (8) طريق
- (9) خائف
- (10) آمن

عمى عالِم ويحب الحيوانات. عندما كان أصغر سنًا، سافر كثيرًا إلى أمريكا الجنوبية للعمل. لقد أحبها لأن الناس هناك كانوا ودودين للغاية وساعدوه فى عمله. ثم، منذ حوالى ثلاث سنوات، حدث له شئ مخيف وكان محظوظًا لأنه عاش ليخبرنى بذلك! إنه كان مهتمًا جدًا بقرد العواء الأمريكى وأراد إجراء بعض الأبحاث عن مجموعات عائلاتهم. أخبره أحد القرويين المحليين بمكان وجود عائلة قرد العواء الأمريكى فى مكان قريب وكان سعيدًا جدًا. لكن القروى قال أيضًا، "غداً، ستهطل أمطار غزيرة لذا قد يكون الوضع غير آمن." انطلق عمى للبحث عن عائلة قرد العواء الأمريكى وسرعان ما كان فى أعماق الغابة. كان يسمع القروود ونظر إلى الأعلى. كان يعلم أنه قريب جدًا منهم. ثم بدأ المطر. كانت أمطار غزيرة جدًا. سرعان ما كان هناك ماء فى كل مكان ولم يتمكن من رؤية الطريق للمضى للأمام أو للخلف. فجأة، جاء الكثير من الماء نحوه وحمله بعيدًا إلى النهر. كان خائفًا جدًا. وفجأة رأى يد وبدأ أحدهم يصرخ. كان القروى. أخذ يد عمى وقال "الآن أنت بأمان!" كان عمى سعيدًا حقًا!

Demonstrate understanding of specific details. وضح فهمك للتفاصيل.

LEARN

1. My uncle is a
a. vet b. doctor c. teacher d. scientist

PRACTICE

2. He traveled a lot in South America for
a. work b. sleep c. money d. fun

Notes for parents

- Help your child to look at the picture and read the text.

- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصورة ويقرأ النص.

Language Focus

The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط

Formation التكوين

Affirmative Statements

الجملة الخبرية
المثبتة

Subject الفاعل

+

التصريف الثاني للفعل

(A) Regular verbs :

(أ) الأفعال المنتظمة :

- We make the affirmative past simple of regular verbs by adding "-ed", "-d" or "-ied".
- يتم تحويل معظم الأفعال إلى زمن الماضي البسيط، بإضافة -ed، -d أو -ied للفعل المنتظم.

Most verbs

watch → watched

• معظم الأفعال المنتظمة
يضاف إليها (ed) :

Add - ed

look → looked

Verbs ending in e

bake → baked

• الأفعال التي تنتهي بـ (e)
يضاف إليها (d) فقط :

Add - d

close → closed

Verbs ending in consonant + y

study → studied

• الأفعال التي تنتهي بـ (y)
قبلها حرف ساكن نحذف
ال (y) ويضاف إلى
الفعل (ied) :

Change (y) to (i) and add - ed

carry → carried

Verbs ending in vowel + y

play → played

• الأفعال التي تنتهي بـ (y)
قبلها حرف متحرك
(a - e - i - o - u)
يضاف إليها (ed) :

Add - ed

ex. - We played football in the park last week.

Notes for parents

- Help your child to learn about the past simple tense.

- ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن زمن الماضي البسيط.

(B) Irregular verbs :

(ب) الأفعال غير المنتظمة :

- Irregular verbs have no rule, we just have to learn these verbs and their past forms as they are.
- ◀ لا توجد قاعدة توضح كيفية تحويل الأفعال الغير منتظمة للماضي البسيط، علينا فقط أن نتعلم هذه الأفعال و صياغتها كما هي.

Irregular Verbs

Infinitive	Meaning	Past Form	Infinitive	Meaning	Past Form
come	يأتي	came	know	يعرف	knew
eat	يأكل	ate	meet	يقابل	met
go	يذهب	went	tell	يخبر	told
set	يحدد / يضع	set	buy	يشترى	bought

ex. - We went to the club yesterday.

◀ في حالة النفي نستخدم الصيغة الآتية:

Negative Statements

2

الجملة الخبرية
المنفية

Subject الفاعل + didn't + inf. المصدر

- ex. - He didn't study his lessons yesterday.
- I didn't send an email to my friend last week.
- She didn't go to the beach last summer.

Key words :

الكلمات الدالة على الزمن

in the past	في الماضي	in 2005	في عام ٢٠٠٥
yesterday	أمس	last (year, month, ...)	السنه الماضية، الشهر الماضي ...
this morning	هذا الصباح		

Usage الاستخدام

- We use the past simple to talk about different things.

◀ نستخدم الماضي البسيط للتحدث عن أشياء مختلفة.

General Exercises

on Lesson 2

نصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب

• Understand • Apply • Create

- Something that happened once
ex. I **visited** her house when I **was** five.
- شئ حدث مرة واحدة
- قمت بزيارة منزلها عندما كنت في الخامسة من عمري.
- Something that happened several times in the past
ex. We **went** to my aunt's house at the beach every summer.
- شئ حدث عدة مرات في الماضي
- كنا نذهب إلى منزل خالتي على الشاطئ كل صيف.
- Something that was true for some time in the past
ex. He **loved** living in his grandmother's apartment **as a child**.
- شئ كان صحيحًا لبعض الوقت في الماضي
- كان يحب المعيشة في شقة جدته عندما كان طفلًا.
- Expressions with ago
ex. I **met** her in Zagazig **two years ago**.
- عبارات مع كلمة "ago"
- قابلتها في مدينة الزقازيق منذ عامين.



Pop Quiz on Language Focus

يقوم التلميذ بأداء تدريب تلقائي للتقان القواعد اللغوية

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Yesterday, our family to our new house in Alexandria.
a. moved b. moving c. moves d. move
- Ali to Alexandria with his family last month.
a. drive b. drives c. drove d. is driving
- She didn't the film yesterday.
a. sees b. seen c. saw d. see
- The children their mother at home yesterday.
a. helped b. helps c. helping d. help
- I eat pizza last weekend.
a. don't b. am not c. won't d. didn't

Notes for parents

• Ask your child to read and choose the correct answer.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويختار الإجابة الصحيحة.

1 Listen and complete.

استمع واكمل.

- I my bedroom with my sister.
- In the middle of the room, there is a/an
- There are two on the armchair.
- On the wall, there are lots of of animals.

2 Read and match (A) with (B).

- | A | B |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| 1. What things make | <input type="checkbox"/> a. kind to someone. |
| 2. There are two | <input type="checkbox"/> b. cushions on the bed. |
| 3. He looks unhappy because | <input type="checkbox"/> c. your bedroom perfect ? |
| 4. "Unfriendly" means not | <input type="checkbox"/> d. very comfortable |
| 5. It's unsafe to | <input type="checkbox"/> e. he lost his bag. |
| | <input type="checkbox"/> f. swim at night. |

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

My uncle is a scientist and loves animals. When he was younger, he traveled a lot in South America for work. He loved it there because the people were very **friendly** and helped him with his work. Then, about three **years ago**, something frightening happened to him and he was lucky he loved to tell me about it!

He was very interested in howler monkeys and wanted to do some research into their family groups. A local villager told him where there was a howler monkey family nearby and he was very happy. But the villager also said, "Tomorrow, we are going to have a lot of rain so it could be unsafe."

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

- The main idea of the text is about ".....".
a. Local villagers b. A scientist loves animals
c. My bedroom d. South America
- The underlined word "friendly" means
a. lucky b. kind c. poor d. ugly

B. Answer the following questions.

- Why did uncle want to do research about howler monkeys ?
.....
- Summarize the second paragraph in one sentence.
.....

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة.

- came – by – Egypt – They – to – airplane.
.....
- There – on – a park – is – the – right.
.....
- armchair – is – That – uncomfortable – very.
.....
- didn't – the – right – I – answer – know.
.....

5 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم للدّتي.

- it was very heavy rain yesterday
.....
- reem is very friendly
.....



Vocabulary

★ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Key vocabulary

Ancient Egypt	مصر القديمة	roofs	أسقف
mud bricks	الطوب اللبن (الطيني)	reed mat	سجادة من الجريد (حصير)
furniture	أثاث	countryside	الريف
papyrus	ورق البردي	oven	فرن
sleeping area	مكان النوم	pot	إناء / وعاء
cool	لطيف / معتدل الحرارة	flat	مسطح

Extra vocabulary

the Nile	النيل	mud	الطين / الطمي
wall	حائط (جدار)	strong	قوى
brick	قالب طوب	drinking	الشرب
cooking	الطبخ	washing	الغسيل
families	عائلات	insects	حشرات
wooden box	صندوق خشبي	crops	محاصيل
baskets	سلال	special style	أسلوب مميز
wind	رياح	gate	بوابة
poem	قصيدة	bank	ضفة نهر



• Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

• ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددها.

Conjugation of verbs

أفعال المضارع

Regular

Irregular

Present	Past	Present	Past
store يخزن	stored	blow تهب	blew
use يستخدم	used	grow يزرع / ينمو	grew
cover يغطي	covered	build يبنى	built
paint يدهن	painted	sleep ينام	slept
relax يسترخي	relaxed	make يصنع	made
		keep يحفظ / يربى	kept

Important expressions and prepositions

عبارات مهمة

- near the Nile بالقرب من النيل
- from the river من النهر
- made of مصنوع من
- make ... cooler يجعل ... منعشًا
- on hot nights في الليالي الحارة
- different from مختلف عن
- sit on يجلس على
- close together بالقرب من بعضهم البعض
- feeling all right يشعر أنه على ما يرام
- never to fall مستحيل أن تسقط
- join together يتصل معًا
- with two floors ذو طابقين
- by the banks بالقرب من ضفاف النيل
- dark inside مظلم بالداخل

Main points on listening and reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

- In Ancient Egypt, many people made their homes near the Nile.
- قام العديد من الناس في مصر القديمة ببناء منازلهم بالقرب من النيل.
- The Ancient Egyptians used mud to make bricks.
- استخدم المصريون القداماء الطين لصناعة قوالب الطوب.
- The mud bricks made very strong walls.
- جعلت قوالب الطوب اللبن الجدران قوية جدًا.
- Ancient Egyptian homes all had flat roofs.
- كانت كل البيوت المصرية القديمة بأسطح مستوية.
- The furniture in Ancient Egyptian homes was different from now.
- اختلف أثاث المنازل في مصر القديمة عن الأثاث في يومنا هذا.



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

يقوم التلميذ بأداء تدريب تلقائي على الكلمات السابقة بعد قراءتها

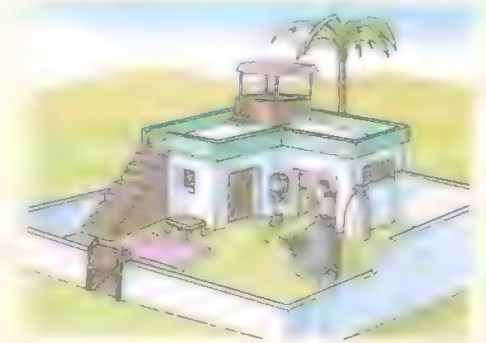
★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

- Beds, chairs and tables are
a. fruits b. furniture c. vegetables d. subjects
- We use water for washing, cooking and
a. reading b. writing c. drinking d. talking
- The is on the top of the house.
a. living room b. roof c. kitchen d. cushion
- Farmers grew a lot of
a. baskets b. books c. boxes d. crops

★ Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم. تدرب على 18 من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع Pop Quiz

Ancient Egyptian Homes

In Ancient Egypt⁽¹⁾, many people made their homes near the Nile. They used its water for drinking⁽²⁾, cooking⁽³⁾, and washing⁽⁴⁾. They also used mud from the river to make bricks for their houses. The mud bricks⁽⁵⁾ made very strong walls⁽⁶⁾.



Check Vocabulary

- (1) مصر القديمة
- (2) الشرب
- (3) الطبخ (الطهي)
- (4) الغسيل
- (5) الطوب اللبن
- (6) جدران

- Ask your child to choose the correct answer.
- Help your child read the text and learn.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة.
- ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ النص ويتعلم.

Ancient Egyptians⁽⁷⁾ wanted to keep their homes cool. The mud bricks helped do this. Some people also painted⁽⁸⁾ their homes white to make them cooler.

Ancient Egyptian homes all had flat roofs⁽⁹⁾, which were the coolest part of the house. Families often cooked, ate, relaxed⁽¹⁰⁾, and slept there on hot nights.

أراد المصريون القدماء المحافظة على منازلهم معتدلة البرودة. ولقد ساعد الطوب اللبن في هذا. بعض الناس أيضًا طابقت⁽⁸⁾ منازلهم بيضاء لجعلها أكثر برودة. كانت المنازل المسطحة هي الجزء الأكثر برودة. قامت العائلات بالطهي، تناول الطعام والديسترخاء والنوم غالبًا على الأسقف في الليالي الحارة.

The furniture⁽¹¹⁾ in Ancient Egyptian homes was very different from⁽¹²⁾ today. There



were reed mats⁽¹³⁾ to sit and sleep on. They used papyrus⁽¹⁴⁾ to cover⁽¹⁵⁾ the windows and doors. This kept the insects outside. In every home, there were large pots and baskets for storing crops and wooden boxes⁽¹⁶⁾ for clothes. Not many people had beds or chairs.

اختلفت الأثاث في المنازل المصرية القديمة عن يومنا هذا كثيرًا حيث كان هذا السجاد من البوص والنوم عليه. قاموا باستخدام ورق البردي لتغطية النوافذ والأبواب. هذا حافظ على برودة الداخل عن الخارج. كان في كل منزل أواني كبيرة وسلال لتخزين المحاصيل وصناديق خشبية للملابس. لم يكن لدى العديد من الناس أسيجة أو كراسي.

Check Vocabulary

المصريون القدماء (7)

نظف، سقى (8)

أسقف مسطحة (9)

استرخى (10)

أثاث (11)

مختلف عن (12)

سجاد من البوص (13)

ورق البردي (14)

عطى (15)

صناديق خشبية (16)

In cities, people lived very close together, and so they built their houses taller, with two floors⁽¹⁷⁾.

This saved space⁽¹⁸⁾ so they could build more houses. City houses joined together, just like today. In the countryside⁽¹⁹⁾, houses usually only had one floor, and they also had a garden. They grew vegetables and kept chickens⁽²⁰⁾ there.

في المدن، الناس lived very close together، لذلك بنوا منازلهم أعلى، مع طوابق⁽¹⁷⁾. هذا saved space⁽¹⁸⁾ حتى يمكنهم بناء المزيد من المنازل. المنازل في المدن كانت متصلة ببعضها البعض، تمامًا مثل اليوم. في الريف، المنازل عادةً ما كانت ذات طابق واحد، وكان لديهم أيضًا حديقة حيث قاموا بزراعة الخضروات وتربية الدواجن هناك.

Check Vocabulary

طوابق (17)

مساحة (18)

ريف (19)

دواجن (20)

Describe the relationship between ideas.

LEARN

1. Where were Ancient Egyptian homes built?

— Near the Nile.

PRACTICE

2. What did Ancient Egyptians use to build their homes?

★ Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.

By the banks of the ancient River Nile,

Egyptian houses had a **dark inside** :

Dark inside with small windows,

Reed mats on the roof where the cool wind **blow**,

Outside under the stars at night,

One family together, feeling **alright** :

Mud from the Nile made their walls

Safe and strong, and never to fall.

Check Vocabulary

داخل غامق (17)

نسيم (18)

على ما يرام (19)



• Help your child read the poem and learn.

• ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ القصيدة ويتعلم.

General Exercises

on Lesson 3

نصوص
الاستماع
و نهاية الكتاب

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ

1. Ancient Egyptians wanted to keep their homes hot.
2. Some people painted their homes red.
3. All ancient Egyptian homes had flat roofs.
4. Families often slept on the roofs on hot nights.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

2 Listen and complete.

استمع واكمل.

1. In Ancient Egypt people in cities lived very together.
2. People built their houses taller with two in cities.
3. In the, ancient Egyptian houses had one floor.
4. In the countryside, they had a to grow vegetables.

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

اقرأ وصل العمود (A) بالعمود (B).

A

1. People made their homes near
2. Farmers always
3. Where did they
4. People stored crops in
5. I live in a house

B

- a. build their homes ?
- b. that had one floor.
- c. large pots and baskets.
- d. the Nile in the past.
- e. keep chickens.
- f. beds or chairs.

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة.

1. did – people – use – What – homes – to build ?
2. often – Ancient Egyptians – on – relaxed – roofs – the.
3. Ancient – mats – on – reed – slept – Egyptians.
4. for – the Nile – drinking – People – water – use.

5 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي.

1. what do you think about Ancient egyptians ?
2. their home is very different from ours

6 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

اكتب فقرة إنشائية مكونة من (40) كلمة مستخدماً العناصر المرشدة.

Ancient Egyptian homes

محات عنه
من نهاية
الكتاب

Guiding fact file :

• What did their homes look like ?	• It had flat roofs.
• What did they use to build it ?	• They used mud bricks to make it.



Phonics

★ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Long and short vowels

Long vowels

1. When there is a double "e" in a word, the sound is long.

★ عندما يكون هناك حرف (e) مزدوج (مكرر مرتين) في كلمة، فإن صوت الحرف يكون طويل.

• Long (ee) (/i:/).



seed بذرة



tree شجرة



sheep خروف



queen ملكة

2. When there is a double "o" in a word, the sound is long.

★ عندما يكون هناك حرف (o) مزدوج (مكرر مرتين) في كلمة، صوت الحرف يكون طويل.

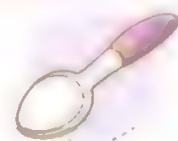
• Long (oo) (/u:/).



school مدرسة



tool أداة



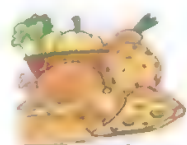
spoon ملعقة



noon وقت الظهر



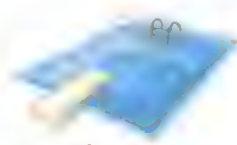
smooth ناعم



food طعام



zoo حديقة حيوان



pool حمام سباحة

Notes for parents

• Help your child listen and repeat the words to distinguish between the short and long vowels.

- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويردد الكلمات ليميز بين الأصوات المتحركة القصيرة والطويلة.

Short vowels

3. We can also pronounce "oo" as a shorter sound.

★ نطق أيضًا (oo) كصوت قصير.

• Short (o) (/ʊ/).



good جيد



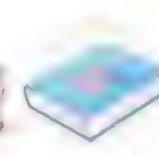
wool صوف



wood خشب



cook طبخ / يطبخ



book كتاب



flood فيضان



blood دم



Pop Quiz on Phonics

1 Read and circle the long "o" (/u:/).

اقرأ وضع دائرة حول صوت الـ "o" الطويل.

pool

wool

book

blood

spoon

food

wood

school

2 Read and sort.

اقرأ ووصف.

tool – three – wool – wood – school – cheese – book – flood – blood – smooth – food – queen

/u:/	/ʌ/	/ʊ/	/e/

1. Ask your child to read and circle the long "o".

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويضع دائرة حول صوت الـ "o" الطويل.

2. Ask your child to read and sort the sounds.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويصنف الأصوات.

Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.

Rounding decimals : تقريب الكسور العشرية

How do we round decimal numbers ? كيف نقرب الأعداد العشرية ؟
Look at the information below about the number 13.95.

انظر إلى المعلومات أدناه حول الرقم ١٣,٩٥

1	3	.	9	5
tens	units	decimal point	tenths ($\frac{1}{10}$)	hundredths ($\frac{1}{100}$)

(digits after the decimal point)

We can round the number after the decimal point to the nearest whole number. It makes the numbers shorter and easier to use.

يمكننا تقريب الرقم بعد الفاصلة العشرية لأقرب عدد صحيح. إنها تجعل الأرقام أقصر وأسهل في الاستخدام.

Let's look at rounding the number: لنلق نظرة على تقريب الرقم:

If the digit in the tenths is 5 or more, then we'll round **up** to the nearest whole number:

إذا كان الرقم في خانة العشرات يساوي ٥ أو أكثر، سوف نقرب لأقرب أكبر عدد صحيح.

13.95 becomes 14

If the digit in the tenths is less than 5, then we round **down** to the nearest whole number:

إذا كان الرقم في خانة العشرات أقل من ٥ فإننا نقرب لأقرب أصغر عدد صحيح.

134.3 becomes 134

Notes for parents

• Help your child to read and learn about rounding decimals numbers. - ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعلم عن تقريب الأرقام العشرية.



Pop Quiz on Math

1 Circle the digits after the decimal point.

ضع دائرة حول الأرقام بعد الفاصلة العشرية.

- | | |
|-----------|---------|
| 1. 283.7 | 6. 4.56 |
| 2. 75.677 | 7. 9.43 |
| 3. 3.290 | 8. 1.45 |
| 4. 10 | 9. 1 |
| 5. 2.310 | 10. 2 |

2 Round the decimal numbers to the nearest whole number.

قرب الأعداد العشرية لأقرب عدد صحيح.

221.22	45.67	678.92	56.88	34.2
.....
3.9	5.2	99.1	173.4	20.8
.....

1. Ask your child to circle the digits after the decimal point. - اطلب من طفلك أن يضع دائرة حول الأرقام بعد النقطة العشرية.
2. Ask your child to round the decimal numbers to the nearest whole number.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرب الأعداد العشرية لأقرب عدد صحيح



Vocabulary

★ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Key vocabulary

blogging	تدوين (في مدونة)	ecological friendly	صديق للبيئة
unusual homes	منازل غير عادية	local people	السكان المحليين
farmhouse	بيت ريفي	landscape	منظر طبيعي

Extra vocabulary

topic	موضوع	fields	حقول	awesome	رائع
architect	مهندس معماري	energy	طاقة	online blog	مدونة عبر الإنترنت
air	هواء	Netherlands	هولندا	upside down	رأساً على عقب
living things	الكائنات الحية	actually	في الواقع	environment	بيئة

Positive adjectives

funny	مضحك
interesting	شيق
brilliant	جذاب / رائع
cool	لطيف
friendly	ودود
awesome	رائع

Negative adjectives

awful	سيئ
boring	ممل
annoying	مزعج

Conjugation of verbs

Regular

Present		Past
change	يغير	changed
work	يعمل	worked
use	يستخدم	used
heat	يسخن	heated
blog	يكتب في مدونة	blogged

Irregular

Present		Past
write	يكتب	wrote
take	يأخذ	took
find	يجد	found
think	يعتقد	thought

Notes for parents

• Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

• ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددهم.

Important expressions and prepositions

- write about
- make energy
- interesting for

يكتب عن
يولد طاقة
مثير لـ

- at the top
- fit in
- related to

في القمة
تناسب
متعلق بـ

★ Study these definitions. ادرس هذه التعريفات.

Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
blogging	to write about something in an online blog الكتابة عن شيء ما في مدونة عبر الإنترنت
ecological	related to living things and their environments متعلق بالكائنات الحية وبيئاتهم

★ Main points on listening and reading texts نقاط هامة علي نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

1. Dalida likes blogging about different things. داليدا تحب التدوين عن أشياء مختلفة.
2. Dalida is writing about unusual homes. داليدا تكتب عن منازل غير عادية.
3. Dalida's mom is an architect. والدة داليدا مهندسة معمارية.
4. Dalida found unusual house in the Netherlands. It's upside down! داليدا وجدت منزل غير عادي في هولندا. إنه مقلوب!



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

يقوم التلميذ بأداء تدريب تلقائي على الكلمات السابقة بعد قراءتها

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. She likes about cooking.
a. playing b. blogging c. growing d. drinking
2. means related to living things and their environments.
a. Ecological b. Brilliant c. Interesting d. Friendly
3. They live in a very nice
a. tree b. cloud c. farmhouse d. star
4. I visited some places with my family. It's really cool.
a. awful b. boring c. bad d. brilliant

• Ask your child to read and choose the correct answer.

• اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة.

Dalida

BLOG HOME ABOUT ME LINKS ARCHIVE



Wednesday, 8th November

Unusual homes

Hi! My name's Dalida and I like **blogging**⁽¹⁾ about different things. This week I'm writing about **unusual**⁽²⁾ homes. This topic is very interesting for me because my mom's an **architect**⁽³⁾, so she sometimes takes me to see some **brilliant**⁽⁴⁾ places. It's really **awesome**!⁽⁵⁾

- أهلاً! أسمى داليدا وأنا أحب التدوين عن أشياء مختلفة. اكتب هذا الأسبوع عن منازل غير عادية. هذا الموضوع ممتع للغاية بالنسبة لي لأن أمي مهندسة معمارية، لذلك تأخذني أحياناً لرؤية بعض الأماكن المذهلة. إنه رائع حقاً!

I found this unusual house in the Netherlands online - it's **upside down**!⁽⁶⁾ It is actually an old **farmhouse**⁽⁷⁾ which people are changing to make it **modern**. This works very well because all the windows are at the top, so you get a lot of light.

Local⁽⁸⁾ people like it because it fits in very well with the local **landscape**⁽⁹⁾, which is farms and fields. It is also very **ecological**⁽¹⁰⁾ because they use air, water, and sun to heat and make energy for the house. That's so cool! 😊
What do you think of it? Do you like it?

- لقد وجدت هذا المنزل غير المعتاد في هولندا عبر الإنترنت - إنه مقلوب! إنه في الواقع بيت ريفي قديم يغيره الناس لجعله حديث. يعمل هذا بشكل جيد للغاية لأن جميع النوافذ في الأعلى، وبالتالي تحصل على الكثير من الضوء. يحبها السكان المحليون لأنه يتلاءم جيداً مع المناظر الطبيعية المحلية، والتي تكون المزارع والحقول. كما أنه صديق للبيئة لأنه يستخدم الهواء والماء والشمس للتدفئة وتوليد الطاقة للمنزل. ذلك لطيف جداً! ما رأيك في ذلك؟ هل أحببت ذلك؟



Check Vocabulary

- (1) تدوين
- (2) غير عادي
- (3) مهندسة معمارية
- (4) مذهلة
- (5) رائع
- (6) مقلوب
- (7) بيت ريفي
- (8) محلي
- (9) مناظر طبيعية
- (10) صديق للبيئة / بيئي



Upside down house in the Netherlands

Writing skill

How to write a blog

1. Write about something you like and enjoy.
اكتب عن شيء تحبه وتستمتع به.
2. Write to your readers as if you are speaking to them. Use contractions (I'm, it's) and words like "awesome" and "cool".
اكتب لقراءك كما لو كنت تتحدث لهم. استخدم الاختصارات (I'm, it's) وكلمات مثل (awesome) و (cool).
3. Use exclamation marks (!) and emojis 😊 😊
استخدم علامات التعجب (!) ورموز تعبيرية.
4. Give your opinion and invite your readers to give theirs.
اعط رأيك وادعو قراءك ليعطوا آراءهم.
5. Check that your spelling is correct.
تأكد من أن الهجاء صحيح.

★ Read the following blog sample. اقرأ النموذج التالي للمدونة.

Sara

BLOG HOME ABOUT ME LINKS ARCHIVE



Friday, 3rd June

Unusual homes

Hi! My name's Sara. I like going online and blogging about unusual things. Last week, I found an unusual house. It was in Ancient Egypt. It's awesome! The Ancient Egyptians used mud bricks to keep their house cool. The mud bricks made very strong walls. It's really cool. What do you think of it? Do you like it?



Notes for parents

• Help your child look at the picture, read the text and learn.

- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور ويقرأ النص ويتعلم.

• Help your child learn how to write a blog.

- ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كيف يكتب مدونة.

General Exercises

on Lessons 5 & 6

نصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

1. People live in different types of homes around the world.
2. Many people live in apartment buildings.
3. In Spain, many people live in houses.
4. Eskimos live in igloos.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

2 Listen and complete.

استمع واكمل.

1. Dalida likes about different things.
2. Dalida is writing about homes this week.
3. Dalida's is an architect.
4. Her mom sometimes takes her to see some brilliant

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

اقرأ وصل العمود (A) بالعمود (B).

- | | | |
|----------------------------|---|------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. What does the home | • | <input type="checkbox"/> a. about something online. |
| 2. Where is the | • | <input type="checkbox"/> b. unusual house ? |
| 3. Blogging means to write | • | <input type="checkbox"/> c. look like ? |
| 4. Funny and friendly | • | <input type="checkbox"/> d. very friendly. |
| 5. My friends are | • | <input type="checkbox"/> e. are positive adjectives. |
| | | <input type="checkbox"/> f. their homes. |

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

I'm Samer. I'm interested in unusual things around the world. One day, I found an unusual house in the Netherlands online – it's upside down! It is actually an old farmhouse which people are changing to make it modern. This works very well because all the windows are at the top, so you get a lot of light.

Local people like it because it fits in very well with the local landscape, which is farms and fields. It is also very ecological because they use air, water, and sun to heat and make energy for the house. That's so cool!

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. The general idea of the text is about " ".
a. Local landscape b. Search online
c. Unusual house d. The Netherlands
2. The underlined word "modern" means
a. old b. new c. usual d. awful

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Why is the unusual house ecological ?
.....
4. Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence.
.....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة.

1. about – different – reading – I – like – things.
.....
2. do – think – What – you – blogging – of ?
.....
3. the Netherlands – in – is – down – The upside – house.
.....
4. friends – Invite – to give – their – your – opinions.
.....

6 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتية.

1. do you like your new house
.....
2. they didn't go to the beach
.....

TEST YOUR SKILLS

Homes in Egypt



If you got ● you need to revise the unit again on the next page.
 قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على ● غير جيد قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في الصفحة التالية.

My Dictation

قياس مدى إتقان المفردات اللغوية

1 Read and write the meaning.

اقرأ واكتب المعنى.

- A. elevator
 architect
 jungle
 online blog
 mud bricks

B.

- شُرْفَة
 سطح
 مقلوب
 عالم
 حديث

My Reading

2 Read and circle.

اقرأ وضع دائرة.

- Most people lived near the Nile so they could have (water/sun) all the time.
- The howler monkey lives in the (desert / jungle).
- To write about something in an online blog, this means (drawing / blogging).

My Language

3 Read and complete with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets.

اقرأ وأكمل بالصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات بين الأقواس.

- My new shoes are too small. They make me feel (comfortable).
- My brother (see) a bear an hour ago.
- Alex didn't (works) last weekend.

My Writing

4 Write a paragraph from (4 – 6) sentences about your perfect bedroom.

اكتب من (٤ – ٦) جمل عن غرفة نومك المثالية.

My project

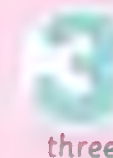
5 Make a presentation about an Ancient Egyptian home.

قم بتلوين الدائرة باللون المناسب لمستواك.

Review on unit 7



Long "e" /i:/



three



cheese

Long "o" /u:/



spoon



zoo

Short "o" /ʊ/



wool



wood

Short "o" /ʌ/



blood



flood



Prefix

- This armchair is uncomfortable, I can't sit on it.
- She is very unfriendly – she never smiles or tries to make friends.

Postfix

- She created a fantastic sculpture from the garbage.
- They didn't eat chocolate because it is unhealthy.

• Write about something you like and enjoy.

- Write to your readers as if you are speaking to them. Use contractions (I'm, it's) and words like "awesome" and "cool".
- Use exclamation marks (!) and emojis.
- Give your opinion and invite your readers to give theirs.

• Help your child review unit 7.

• ساعد طفلك في مراجعة الوحدة السابعة.



هذا الجزء يمكنك من ربط الكلمات التي درستها بجمل
ليساعدك على التمكن من مهارة القراءة والكتابة

1. Reading & writing skills :

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
My perfect bedroom	love	I love my bedroom.
	share	I share my bedroom with my sister.
	big – closet	There is an armchair and a big closet in my bedroom.
	wall – posters	On the wall, there are lots of posters of animals.
Ancient Egyptian homes	homes – different	In Ancient Egypt, homes were generally very different.
	built – made of	Ancient Egyptians built their houses from mud bricks.
	flat roofs	All Ancient Egyptian homes had flat roofs.
	furniture	Furniture in Ancient Egyptian homes was very different from today.
	paint – cooler	People painted their house white to make them cooler.
Unusual homes	found – online	I found unusual house in the Netherlands online.
	farmhouse	It's an old farmhouse which people are changing to make it modern.
	upside	It's unusual house. It's upside down!
	windows-top	All the windows are at the top of the house.
Howler monkeys	scientist	My uncle is a scientist.
	interested in	He is interested in howler monkeys.
	some research	My uncle wanted to do some research into their family groups.
	local villager	A local villager helped my uncle find howler monkeys.

Sentence Building

تدرب علي كيفية تكوين جملة



2. How to make a sentence :

٢. تعلم كيف تكون جملة

الجملة الخبرية

1. was – **He** – frightened.
2. my bedroom – share – my sister – **I** – with

	فاعل	فعل	باقي الجملة
1			
2			

الجملة الأمرية

1. about – **Write** – like – you – something.
2. opinion – your – **Give**.

	Don't	مصدر الفعل	باقي الجملة
1			
2			

الجملة الاستفهامية

(أ) السؤال ب (كلمة استفهام .. ؟)

1. do – **Where** – live – you ?
2. use – their homes – to build – did – people – **What** ?

	كلمة الاستفهام	فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسي	باقي السؤال
1	Where				
2					

(ب) السؤال ب (هل .. ؟)

1. you – **Do** – homes – like – unusual ?
2. big – small – or – your room – **Is** ?

	فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسي	باقي السؤال
1				
2				

3. Writing skill :

٣. تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة
قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة (٢٤ جملة)

1 Your new apartment

I love my new apartment⁽¹⁾. It's a great apartment⁽²⁾. The new kitchen is bigger, and the oven is more modern⁽³⁾. There's more space in the living room so we can have a bigger television⁽⁴⁾. We have three bedrooms now and two bathrooms⁽⁵⁾. The balcony is fantastic, too⁽⁶⁾.

2 Your perfect room

I love my bedroom⁽⁷⁾. I share it with my sister⁽⁸⁾. On the right, there is my bed with a desk next to it⁽⁹⁾. On the left, there is my sister's bed⁽¹⁰⁾. In the middle of the room, there is an armchair with two cushions and a big closet⁽¹¹⁾. On the wall, there are lots of posters of animals⁽¹²⁾.

3 Ancient Egyptian homes

In Ancient Egypt, homes were generally very different⁽¹³⁾. People built their houses from bricks made of mud from the river⁽¹⁴⁾. The mud bricks made the walls strong⁽¹⁵⁾. People use papyrus to cover doors and windows⁽¹⁶⁾. Some houses were very cool⁽¹⁷⁾. All of the houses had flat roofs.⁽¹⁸⁾

4 Unusual homes

There's an unusual house in the Netherlands⁽¹⁹⁾. It's upside down⁽²⁰⁾! It's an old farmhouse which people want it to make it modern⁽²¹⁾. All the windows are at the top, so you get a lot of light⁽²²⁾. It fits in very well with local landscape, which is farms and fields⁽²³⁾. That's so cool⁽²⁴⁾.

Test on Unit 7

موضوع
الاستماع
و تقارب الأفكار

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

1. In Ancient Egypt, many people made their homes near the Nile.
2. People used the Nile water for drinking only.
3. They used mud to make bricks.
4. Ancient Egyptians built walls with paper.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

2 Listen and complete.

1. The furniture in Ancient Egyptian homes was very from today.
2. There were reed to sit and sleep on.
3. They used to cover the windows.
4. In every home, there were baskets for storing .

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

- | A | | B |
|-----------------------------|---|-----------------------------|
| 1. We have three | • | a. armchair in my bedroom. |
| 2. Do you live in | • | b. move to a new house. |
| 3. My parents had to | • | c. are two posters. |
| 4. There is a closet and an | • | d. bedrooms in our house. |
| 5. On the walls, there | • | e. a house or an apartment? |
| | | f. doesn't feel nice. |

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

I'm Mazen. I live in Alexandria with my parents and my brother, Waheed. We live in a big apartment. There are two bedrooms in our apartment. I share a room with my brother. We have a big kitchen on the right. We have two bathrooms. There are two beds in my room. In the middle of the room, you can see a big closet for our clothes. I like my bedroom. I like the view of the park from our balcony.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

- The main idea of the text is about ".....".
a. Mazen's job b. Mazen's apartment
c. Mazen's family d. Mazen's friends
- Mazen keeps his clothes in a big
a. bed b. bag c. box d. closet

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Does Mazen like his apartment ?

4. Who does Mazen share a room with ?

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

- moved – a new – We – to – house.
- don't – I – unsafe – sports – like.
- like – didn't – I – homes – unusual.
- loves – a scientist – is – My uncle – animals – and.

6 Punctuate the following.

- the mud bricks made very strong walls
- he set out to look for the monkeys

7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

Unusual homes

Guiding questions :

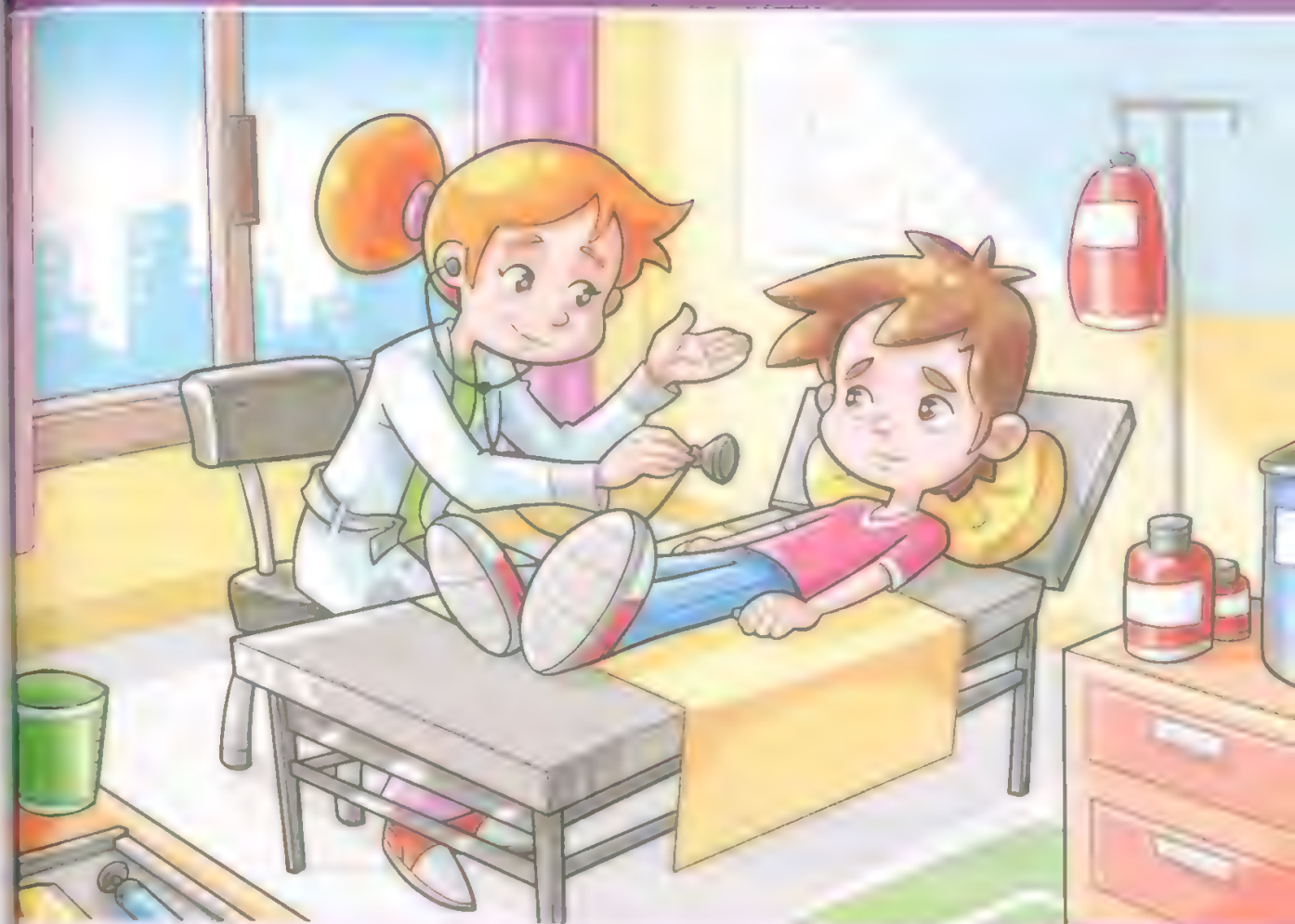
- Where is it ?
- Why is it unusual ?

مجاب عنه
في نهاية
الكتاب

UNIT 8

At the doctor's

في العيادة



• اللقييمات الشهيرة في كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية.
• Dictation في نهاية الوحدة.

Test your skills في نهاية الوحدة.

• Reading and Writing Skill في نهاية الوحدة.

• تدريبات للأزهر الشريف في نهاية الكتاب.

Aims of unit eight :

In this unit I will

- listen, read, research, and write about different illnesses and treatments.
- أستمع، أقرأ، أبحث وأكتب عن أمراض وعلاجات مختلفة.
- read a story about an elephant.
- أقرأ قصة عن فيل.
- practice using have to talk about illnesses.
- أتدرب على استخدام "have" للتحدث عن الأمراض.
- listen to and understand a conversation between a doctor and a patient.
- أستمع إلى وأفهم محادثة بين طبيب ومريض.

الأهداف العامة للوحدة الثامنة :

في هذه الوحدة سوف

- learn about and use the prefixes un, ir, il, and im.
- اتعلم عن وأستخدم البادئات (im, il, ir, un).
- understand the difference between /f/ and /v/ sounds.
- أفهم الفرق بين أصوات /f/ و /v/.
- write a short paragraph about staying healthy.
- أكتب فقرة إنشائية قصيرة عن البقاء صلياً.
- plan what to put in a first-aid kit and make a poster.
- أخطط عن ما يتم وضعه في حقيبة الإسعافات الأولية وأصنع ملصق.

They didn't come to the club!

Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

★ Look, listen and repeat. انظر، استمع وردد.

illnesses



backache

ألم في الظهر



cough

سعال



toothache

ألم الأسنان



headache

ألم



sore throat

احمرار بالحلق



earache

ألم بالاذن



cold

برد

Extra vocabulary

club	نادي	ankle	كاحل	honey	عسل
OK	بخير	shoulder	كتف	coach	مدرب
stomach	معدة	practice	تمرين	back	ظهر
problem	مشكلة	dentist	طبيب الأسنان	swimming	السباحة

Conjugation of verbs

Regular

Present

talk يتحدث
hope يأمل - يتمنى

Past

talked
hoped

Irregular

Present

say يقول
hurt يجرّح - يؤلم
tell يخبر
come يأتي
feel يشعر
have لديه - يقضى

Past

said
hurt
told
came
felt
had

Important expressions and prepositions

What about ..?

ماذا عن ..؟

feel better

يشعر بتحسن

I hope so, too.

أتمنى ذلك، أيضًا.

not really

ليس بالفعل

Be careful !

كن حذرًا!

stay home

يبقى في المنزل

What's the matter?

ما الأمر؟

worried about

قلق بشأن

Main points on listening and reading tasks

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

- Fares went to the club today. ذهب فارس إلى النادي اليوم.
- Some of his friends have problems, so they didn't come to the club today. بعض من أصدقاء فارس لديهم مشكلات طبية لذلك لم يأتوا للنادي اليوم.
- The coach told them to be careful. أخبرهم المدرب أن يكونوا حذرين.
- When they have a cough or a sore throat, they should stay home. عندما يعانون من السعال أو احتقان الحلق، يجب عليهم البقاء في المنزل.



Pop Quiz on vocabulary

يقوم التلميذ بأداء تدريب تلقائي على الكلمات السابقة بعد قراءتها

★ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- She went to the dentist because she had a
a. toothache b. headache c. cough d. cold
- I have a, can you help me ?
a. prize b. meal c. problem d. club
- They went to the for football practice.
a. dentist b. club c. pool d. doctor
- I feel hungry. My hurts.
a. ear b. foot c. back d. stomach

• Ask your child to read and choose the correct answer.

• اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويختار الإجابة الصحيحة.

Notes for parents

• Help your child look, listen to the words and repeat them.

• ساعد طفلك أن ينظر، يستمع إلى الكلمات ويردد.

In Ancient Egypt, doctors often used honey as medicine to help sick people.
في مصر القديمة، استخدم الأطباء عادةً العسل كدواء لمساعدة المرضى.

☆ Listen, read and role-play. استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار.

كيف يشعر فارس اليوم؟ How does Fares feel today?

Hi Fares! Did you have a good day at the club?
أهلاً فارس! هل قضيت يوم جيد في النادي؟

Not really. Five people didn't come to the club today!
ليس بالفعل، لكن خمسة أشخاص لم يحضروا إلى النادي اليوم!

Oh no! Are they OK?
أوه لا! هل هم بخير؟

No, they have problems. My friend Tarek hurt his ankle at football practice last night. And Amr has an earache from swimming.
لا، لديهم مشكلات. صديقي طارق أصاب كاحله في تدريب كرة القدم الليلة الماضية. وعمره لديه ألم في الأذن من السباحة.

What about your cousin Lama? Your aunt said she had a toothache.
ماذا عن ابنة عمك لاما؟ قالت عمتك أنها كانت تعاني من ألم الأسنان.

No, she wasn't there. I think she went to the dentist. Two of my friends have a cold. The coach told us to be careful. When we have a cough or a sore throat, we should stay home!
لا، لم تكن هناك. أعتقد أنها ذهبت إلى طبيب الأسنان. اثنين من أصدقائي لديهم برد. أخبرنا المدرب أن نكون حذرين. عندما نعانى من الكحة أو احتقان بالحلق، يجب علينا البقاء بالمنزل!

How do you feel?
كيف تشعر؟

Well, I have a backache and I'm worried about my friends. I hope they'll feel better tomorrow.
حسنًا، أنا أعاني من ألم في الظهر وأنا قلق على أصدقائي. أتمنى أن يشعروا بتحسن غدًا.

I hope so, too!
أتمنى ذلك، أيضًا!

Notes for parents

- Help your child listen to the dialog and let him/her say what he/she listens to correctly, then ask him/her to role-play it with his/her colleagues.
- ساعد طفلك في الاستماع إلى المحادثة ودعه يقول ما يسمعه بطريقة صحيحة، ثم اطلب منه أن يتبادل الأدوار مع زملائه.

General Exercises

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Fares went to the park.
2. Fares had a good day at the park.
3. Three of Fares's friends have problems.
4. The coach told Fares to be careful.

2 Read and match (A) with (B).

- | A | B |
|---------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Nada didn't come | <input type="checkbox"/> a. be careful. |
| 2. How do | <input type="checkbox"/> b. to the club yesterday. |
| 3. Tarek hurt | <input type="checkbox"/> c. a toothache. |
| 4. I hope he | <input type="checkbox"/> d. you feel? |
| 5. She has | <input type="checkbox"/> e. his ankle. |
| | <input type="checkbox"/> f. will be fine. |

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. throat – you – Do – have – a – sore ?

2. how – your – feel – does – brother – today ?

3. came – club – to – the – yesterday.

4. cold – think – you – a – have.

4 Punctuate the following.

1. what's the matter, Dina

2. i don t have a headache, Mom.

5 Read the text and answer the questions.

It's Tuesday and Baher is at home. He can't go to school because he has a cold. He must stay in bed. He has a cough and a sore throat so he can't talk. The doctor says he must not run or play. He must sleep and drink a lot of water. All his family are worried about him. They hope he will get better soon.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

- Today is
a. Monday b. Friday c. Tuesday d. Wednesday
- Baher has a
a. cold b. backache c. headache d. toothache

B. Answer the following questions.

- Why can't Baher talk ?
- What must Baher do to get better ?

6 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

Different illnesses

Guiding elements :

- doctor
- toothache

مداين عنه
فى نهاية
الكتاب

Lesson 2

Part 1

CLIL : Science
Water

Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

★ Look, listen and repeat. انظر واستمع وردد.



glacier بهر جليدى



lake



river بهر



ocean



stream نهر صغير

Extra vocabulary

salt water	مياه مالحة	sea water	مياه البحر
fresh water	مياه عذبة	glasses	أكواب
health	صحة	bathwater	مياه الاستحمام
crops	محاصيل	rain	مطر / تمطر
salt	ملح	difference	اختلاف
stomachache	ألم فى المعدة	the Red Sea	البحر الأحمر
the River Nile	نهر النيل	the Mediterranean Sea	البحر الأبيض المتوسط
clues	أفكار - إشارات	drinking water	مياه الشرب

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present

call يدعى / يسمى
discuss يناقش

Past

called
discussed

Irregular

Present

drink يشرب
think يفكر

Past

drank
thought

• Help your child to look at the pictures, listen to the words and repeat them.

• ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور ويستمع إلى الكلمات ويردد.

Salt water : can also be called sea water. It is the water in seas and oceans.

المياه المالحة : يمكن أيضا أن تسمى بمياه البحر. إنها المياه الموجودة فى البحار والمحيطات

Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

- important for هام ل
- a day في اليوم الواحد
- How many ? كم العدد ... ؟
- water for crops مياه لرى المحاصيل



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

يقوم التلميذ بأداء تدريب تلقائي على الكلمات السابقة بعد قراءتها

★ Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- We get water from the River Nile.
a. salt b. hot c. fresh d. rain
- She had two of orange juice.
a. pots b. glasses c. forks d. plates
- The is a small river.
a. ocean b. glacier c. sea d. stream
- Fruits are very useful for your
a. water b. health c. time d. science

★ Look, read and learn. انظر، اقرأ وتعلم.

fresh water			
	drinking water	water for crops	bathwater
salt water			
	the Red Sea	the Mediterranean Sea	ocean

Lesson

2

Part 2 ▶ Describing the elephant



Vocabulary

★ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Key vocabulary

blind	كفيف	incredible	مدهش - رائع
special	مميز	trunk	خرطوم الفيل - جذع الشجرة
flexible	مرن	tusk	ناب
spear	رمح	rope	حبل

Extra vocabulary

stories	قصص	idea	فكرة
local	محلي	farmer	فلاح
enormous = huge	ضخم	farm	مزرعة
wrong	خطأ - مخطئ	strong	قوى
hard	صعب	dangerous	خطير
smooth	ناعم - أملس	flat	مسطح
leaf	ورقة شجر	clever	ماهر
correct	صحيح	excited	متحمس
tail	ذيل	pointed	مدبب / مسنن
round	مستدير	wall	حائط
part	جزء	moral	مغزى القصة / الدرس المستفاد

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الافعال

Regular

Present		Past
describe	يصف	described
touch	يلمس	touched
discover	يكشف	discovered
reach	يصل	reached
shape	يشكل	shaped
turn	يستدير	turned
stop	يتوقف	stopped

Irregular

Present		Past
meet	يقابل	met
put	يضع	put
see	يرى	saw
understand	يفهم	understood
hear	يسمع	heard

Notes for parents

- Ask your child to read and choose the correct answer.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويختار الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Help your child to listen to the words and repeat them.

- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددهم

Ordinal numbers

first	الأول	fourth	الرابع
second	الثاني	fifth	الخامس
third	الثالث	sixth	السادس

Important expressions and prepositions

• a long time ago	منذ وقت طويل	• for a moment	للحظة / لبعض الوقت
• along the road	على طول الطريق	• look like	يشبه
• the side of	جانب من	• Finally, ...	في النهاية, ...
• reach out	يصل إلى	• In fact, ...	في الحقيقة, ...
• part of	جزء من	• find out	يكتشف

★ Study these words.

ادرس هذه الكلمات.

Word الكلمة	Meaning المعنى
blind	can't see لا يستطيع الرؤية
trunk	the very long nose of an elephant أنف الفيل الطويلة جدًا
tusk	a very long pointed tooth سن مدببة طويلة جدًا
spear	a long pointed stick عصا مدببة طويلة

★ Main points on listening and reading texts

- There were six blind men who wanted to meet an elephant.
كان هناك ستة رجال مكفوفين يريدون مقابلة فيل.
- The six men had heard many stories about elephants.
لقد سمع الست رجال العديد من القصص عن الأفيال.
- They were very excited to touch the elephant.
كانوا متحمسين جدًا ليلمسوا الفيل.
- Each of the men only touched one part of the elephant.
كل واحد من الرجال لمس جزءًا واحدًا فقط من الفيل.



Pop Quiz on vocabulary

يقوم التلميذ بأداء تدريب تلقائي على الكلمات السابقة بعد قراءتها

★ Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Hatem can't see. He is
a. hard b. strong c. blind d. excited
2. Snakes are very animals, be careful.
a. fast b. dangerous c. huge d. fat
3. The little ant carried a from the tree.
a. leaf b. trunk c. tusk d. farm

★ Look, listen and read. انظر، استمع وأقرأ.

A long time ago, there were six men who wanted to meet an elephant. They had heard many stories about these incredible animals, but each man had a different idea about what the elephant would look like.



منذ زمن بعيد، كان هناك ستة رجال مكفوفين يريدون مقابلة فيل. لقد سمعوا العديد من القصص عن هذه الحيوانات المدهشة، لكن كان لكل منهم فكرة مختلفة عن شكل الفيل.

One day, a local⁽³⁾ farmer was walking along the road with an elephant that worked on his farm. The farmer asked if the men would like to touch⁽⁴⁾ the elephant to discover how it looks. The men were very excited and walked over to the enormous animal.

في أحد الأيام، كان مزارع محلي يسير على طول الطريق مع فيل يعمل في مزرعته. سأل المزارع عما إذا كان الرجال يرغبون في لمس الفيل ليكتشفوا كيف يبدو. كان الرجال متحمسين للغاية وساروا نحو الحيوان الضخم.

The first man touched the side of the elephant. He said, "It's very tall and very strong. It's like a wall!" The second man put

Check Vocabulary

- كفيف
- قصص
- محلي
- يلمس (4)

• Ask your child to read and choose the correct answer.

• Help your child to look at the picture, listen and read the story.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويختار الإجابة الصحيحة.
- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصورة، يستمع ويقرأ القصة.

his arms around the elephant's back leg. He said, "No, you're wrong! It's strong and strong, like a tree trunk!" When the third man put his hand on the elephant's trunk, he said, "You're both wrong!
The elephant is long and flexible ... it's just like a snake!"

Check Vocabulary

مستدير

حذع الشجرة

(7) ناب

(8) أملس / ناعم

لمس الرجل الأول جانب الفيل وقال: "إنه طويل جدًا وقوي جدًا. إنه يشبه الجدار!" وضع الرجل الثاني ذراعيه حول ساق الفيل الخلفية وقال: "لا، أنت مخطئ! إنه مستدير وقوي. مثل حذع شجرة!" عند ما وضع الرجل الثالث يده على خرطوم الفيل، قال: "كلاكما مخطئ! الفيل طويل ومرن ... إنه مثل ثعبان!"

The fourth man put his fingers against the elephant's trunk. He said, "It's hard, long, and smooth. I think it's dangerous like a spear!" The fifth man was very, very tall. He reached out and touched the elephant's ear. He said, "This elephant is flat and flat, and shaped just like a leaf!"

وضع الرجل الرابع أصابعه على ذيل الفيل وقال: "إنه صلب وطويل وأملس. أعتقد أنه خطير كالرمح." كان الرجل الخامس طويلًا جدًا. مد يده ولمس أذن الفيل وقال: "هذا الفيل أملس وبسطح، وشكله مثل ورقة الشجر!"

Finally, the sixth man put his hand on the elephant's tail. He said, "This elephant is not like a wall, a spear, or a snake. It's not like a leaf or tree trunk! This elephant is just like a rope!"

The farmer listened to everything the men said. He turned to them and said, "In fact, you're all correct! Each of you only touched one part of the elephant. If you stop for a moment, and listen to what you all think, you can all see what the elephant looks like."

أخيرًا، وضع الرجل السادس يده على ذيل الفيل وقال: "هذا الفيل ليس مثل جدار أو رمح أو أفعى. إنه ليس مثل ورقة أو حذع شجرة! هذا الفيل مثل حبل!"

استمع المزارع إلى كل ما قاله الرجال. التفت إليهم وقال: "فر الحقيقة جميعكم على حق! كل واحد منكم لمس جزءًا واحدًا فقط من الفيل. إذا توقفت للحظة واستمعتم إلى ما تعتقدوه جميعًا، يمكنكم جميعًا أن تفهموا كيف يبدو الفيل"

The moral of the story

المعنى من القصة

- When we listen to other people, we can understand the world better.
عندما نستمع للآخرين، نتمكن من فهم العالم بشكل أفضل.

1 Listen and complete.

1. There were six men.
2. A local farmer was walking along the road with an elephant.
3. The men wanted to touch the elephant.
4. The men would like to discover how the elephant was.

2 Read and match (A) with (B).

- | | |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. Salt water is the water | a. is like a tree trunk. |
| 2. We can't drink | b. everything the men said. |
| 3. The elephant's back leg | c. is just like a rope! |
| 4. Blind people | d. the water in the sea. |
| 5. The farmer listened to | e. in seas and oceans. |
| | f. can't see. |

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. your health – water – is – very – important – for ?
.....
2. water – 9 glasses – drink – a day – | – of fresh.
.....
3. the world – animal – the biggest – The elephant – is – in.
.....
4. find out – want to – What – the blind – did – man ?
.....

4 Punctuate the following.

1. what is special about the men
.....
2. the elephant's trunk is long and flexible
.....

5 Read the text and answer the questions.

A long time ago, there were six blind men who wanted to meet an elephant. They had heard many stories about these incredible animals, but each man had a different idea about what the elephant would look like. One day, a local farmer was walking along the road with an elephant who worked on his farm. The farmer asked if the men would like to touch the elephant to discover how it looks. The men were very excited and walked over to the enormous animal.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

- The underlined word "blind" means can't
a. hear b. feel c. work d. see
- The farmer was really
a. rude b. helpful c. fast d. ugly

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Did the men touch the elephant ?

4. What did the blind men want to do ?

6 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

Incredible animals

Guiding elements

- the elephant
- trunk

في نهاية



Vocabulary

★ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Key vocabulary

playground	ملاعب	bandage	ضمادة طبية
medicine	دواء	illness	مرض
cut	دخ / قطع	body	جسم

Conjugation of verbs

أشرف الأفعال

Regular

Present

stay	يبقى
worry	يقلق
clean	ينظف

Past

stayed
worried
cleaned

Irregular

Present

fall	يسقط
feel	يشعر

Past

fell
felt

Important expressions and prepositions

كلمات مهمة وحرف جر هامة

- feel well يشعر أنه بخير
- put ... on يضع ... على
- fell over سقط أرضاً
- come in تفضل بالدخول

Main points on listening and reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

- Ashraf doesn't feel well. أشرف لا يشعر أنه بخير.
- Ashraf went to the doctor. ذهب أشرف إلى الطبيب.
- Ashraf has a cold. أشرف لديه برد.
- Nahla fell over in the playground. سقطت نهلة في الملعب.
- Nahla has a cut on her arm. نهلة لديها جرح في ذراعها.
- A nurse put a bandage on Nahla's arm.

وضعت الممرضة ضمادة طبية على ذراع نهلة.

• Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

• ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددهم



Listening and Reading

★ Listen, read and role-play. استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار.

What's the matter with Ashraf ? ما مشكلة أشرف ؟



Ashraf : Hello, Doctor. I don't feel well.

أهلاً، أيها الطبيب. لا أشعر إني على ما يرام.



Doctor : What's the matter, Ashraf ? Do you have a headache ?

ما الأمر يا أشرف ؟ هل لديك صداع ؟



Ashraf : No, Doctor. I don't have a headache.

لا، أيها الطبيب. ليس لدى صداع.



Doctor : Do you have a stomachache ? هل لديك ألم بالمعدة ؟



Ashraf : No, Doctor. I don't have a stomachache.

لا، أيها الطبيب. ليس لدى ألم بالمعدة.



Doctor : Do you have a toothache ? هل لديك ألم بالأسنان ؟



Ashraf : No, Doctor. I don't have a toothache. I have ... I have ... Achoo!

لا، أيها الطبيب. ليس لدي ألم بالأسنان. أحي ... أنا أحي ...



Doctor : Oh, dear! You have a cold. Stay home, sleep well, and take this medicine.

يا عزيزي أنت تعاني من البرد. أبقى في المنزل، نام جيداً وتناول هذا الدواء.

Notes for parents

- Help your child listen to the dialog and let him/her say what he/she listens to correctly, then ask him/her to role-play it with his/her colleagues.
- ساعد طفلك في الاستماع إلى المحادثة ودعه يقول ما يسمعه بطريقة صحيحة، ثم اطلب منه أن يتبادل الأدوار مع زملائه.

★ Listen, read and role-play. استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار.



Nurse : Come in, Nahla. What's the matter ?

تفضل بالدخول يا نهلة. ما الأمر ؟



Nahla : I fell over in the playground.

انهدمت أرضاً في الساحة.



Nurse : Oh, dear. Where does it hurt ?

أوه، يا عزيزتي. أين تشعرين بالألم ؟



Nahla : Here. I have a cut on my arm.

هنا. لدى جرح في ذراعي.



Nurse : Oh, yes, I see. Don't worry. I'll clean it and put a bandage on it.

أوه، نعم، أرى الجرح. لا تقلقي. أنا سأنظف الجرح وأضع ضمادة طبية عليه.



Nahla : Thank you, nurse.

شكراً لك أيتها الممرضة.

Language Focus

Using "have" to talk about illnesses

استخدام "have" للتحدث عن الأمراض.

Affirmative statements
الجملة الخبرية
المثبتة

He / She / It + اسم مفرد + has + noun / باقي الجملة

I / you / we / they + اسم جمع + have + noun / باقي الجملة



I have a headache.



She has a stomachache.

- Help your child use verb "have" to talk about illnesses.

• ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم الفعل "have" للتحدث عن الأمراض.

2

statements

الجملة الخبرية
المنفية

He / she / It / اسم مفرد + **doesn't have** + باقى الجملة / noun

I / you / we / they / اسم جمع + **don't have** + باقى الجملة / noun



I don't have a cold.



She doesn't have an earache.

3

Interrogative

صيغة
الاستفهام

السؤال بمعنى هل ... ؟ YES / NO question

does + he / she / It / اسم مفرد + **have** + باقى السؤال ?

do + I / you / we / they / اسم جمع + **have** + باقى السؤال ?



Do you have an earache ?



- Yes, I do.
- No, I don't. I have a sore throat.

Contraction الاختصار : have = 've has = 's



Pop Quiz on Language Focus

يقوم التلميذ بأداء تدريب تلقائي لإتقان القواعد اللغوية

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

- Do you a headache ?
a. has b. having c. have d. had
- She a cold.
a. have b. don't have c. having d. doesn't have
- They an earache.
a. has b. doesn't have c. have d. having
- He a stomachache.
a. have b. have to c. having d. has
- I have a sore throat.
a. isn't b. doesn't c. don't d. am not

Notes for parents

• Ask your child to choose the correct answer.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة

General Exercises

Lesson 3
(Part 1)

• Create

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

- Tom is at home today.
- He is feeling well.
- Tom has a cough.
- He will go to the doctor tomorrow.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

2 Read and match (A) with (B).

- | A | B |
|--------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. He fell over | a. put a bandage. |
| 2. I don't feel | b. have a cold ? |
| 3. Do you | c. this medicine. |
| 4. What is the | d. well today. |
| 5. You should take | e. in the playground. |
| | f. matter, Reem ? |

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. cut - I - on the - will - put - a bandage.

2. not - toothache - She - a - have - does.

3. matter - with - Ashraf - is - the ?

4. take - home - this - medicine - and.



Vocabulary

★ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Key vocabulary

patient	مرضى	busy	مشغول
hospital	مستشفى	staff	طاقم العاملين / الموظفين
crowded	مزدحم	injection	حقنة
corridor	رواق / ممر	relatives	أقارب
unwell	مرضى		

Extra vocabulary

India	دولة الهند	member	عضو
country	دولة - بلد	wonderful	رائع / عجيب
unusual	غير عادي	alone	بمفرده
city	مدينة (كبيرة)	lesson	درس - محاضرة

Conjugation of verbs

أشرف الأفعال

Regular

Irregular

Present	Past	Present	Past
treat يعالج	treated	mean يعنى/يقصد	meant
visit يزور	visited	teach يُعلم	taught
change يغير	changed	learn يتعلم	learnt
care يعتنى/يرعى	cared	give يعطى	gave
return يعود/يرجع	returned	become يصبح	became

Important expressions and prepositions

عبارات وحالات هامة

• all over the country جميع أنحاء البلد	• instead of بدلاً من
• look after يعتنى بـ	• care for يعتنى / يرعى
• For example, ... على سبيل المثال, ...	• turn ... into ... يحول ... إلى ...
• learn how to يتعلم كيف يقوم بـ	• helpful for مفيد لـ

Notes for parents

• Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

• ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددها.

Main points on listening and reading: نصائح هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

- The text is about a hospital in India.
- هذا النص عن مستشفى فى الهند.
- The hospital is a very busy place that treats patients.
- المستشفى هى مكان مزدحم جدًا يعالج المرضى.
- People usually go to the hospital with many relatives.
- يذهب الناس عادة إلى المستشفى مع العديد من الأقارب.
- At this special hospital, the staff teach the family members how to do useful things like changing a bandage or giving injections.
- فى هذه المستشفى المميزة، يعلم الموظفون أفراد العائلة كيف يقومون بأداء أشياء مفيدة مثل تغيير الضمادة، أو إعطاء الحقن.
- This helps them to care for their relatives when they go home.
- هذا يساعدهم فى الاعتناء بأقاربهم عندما يعودون للمنزل.



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

يقوم التلميذ بأداء تدريب تلقائى على الكلمات السابقة بعد قراءتها

★ Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. There was a party, so the club was
a. near b. crowded c. unwell d. sick
2. The nurse put a / an on the cut on my leg.
a. mat b. injection c. problem d. bandage
3. Mom took my brother to the hospital.
a. busy b. special c. sick d. well
4. I invited all my : uncle, aunt and cousins.
a. friends b. relatives c. patients d. staff



• Ask your child to read and choose the correct answer.

• اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويختار الإجابة الصحيحة.

In a hospital⁽¹⁾ in Bangalore, a city in southern India, there are many patients⁽²⁾. The hospital treats⁽³⁾ patients from all over the country. With every patient, there are about ten family members. In India, it is unusual for a sick person to go to the hospital alone.



في مستشفى في بنغالور مدينة في جنوب الهند، هناك العديد من المرضى. تعالج المستشفى المرضى من جميع أنحاء البلاد، مع كل مريض، هناك حوالي عشرة أفراد من العائلة. في الهند، من غير المعتاد أن يذهب المريض إلى المستشفى بمفرده.

Family usually go with their unwell⁽⁴⁾ relative. This means that the hospital is often very crowded⁽⁵⁾ and busy. But instead of telling family members that they can't visit their sick relatives, the staff at this hospital do something special. They turn a problem into something wonderful. They have classes to teach the family to look after the sick person. For example, some people learn how to change bandages⁽⁶⁾ and others learn how to give injections⁽⁷⁾.

عادة ما تذهب الأسرة مع قريبهم المريض. هذا يعني أن المستشفى غالباً ما تكون مزدحمة ومشغولة للغاية. لكن بدلاً من إخبار أفراد الأسرة بأنهم لا يستطيعون زيارة أقاربهم المرضى، يقوم الموظفون في هذه المستشفى بعمل شيء مميز. إنهم يحولون المشكلة إلى شيء رائع. لديهم فصول لتعليم الأسرة رعاية الشخص المريض. على سبيل المثال، يتعلم بعض الأشخاص كيفية تغيير الضمادات وآخرين يتعلموا كيفية إعطاء الحقن.

Each afternoon, staff from the hospital turn the corridors into classrooms. The nurses become teachers and the family members – and sometimes even the patients – become the students. Not only does this help the hospital staff, but it also helps the families to care for their relatives when they go home. The staff know that the lessons work because not as many patients return to the hospital now.

بعد ظهر كل يوم، يقوم موظفو المستشفى بتحويل الممرات إلى فصول دراسية. تصبح الممرضات معلمات ويصبح أفراد الأسرة - وأحياناً المرضى - طلاباً. لا يساعد ذلك طاقم المستشفى فحسب، بل يساعد العائلات أيضاً على رعاية أقاربهم عند عودتهم إلى المنزل. يعلم الموظفون أن الدروس تنجح لأنه لا يوجد عدد كبير من المرضى يعودون إلى المستشفى الآن.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) مستشفى
- (2) مريض
- (3) يعالج
- (4) مريض
- (5) مزدحم
- (6) ضمادات
- (7) حقن

Notes for parents

- Help your child look at the picture, listen and read the text.

- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصورة، يستمع ويقرأ النص.

Language Focus

Prefix البادئة

What is a prefix ?

A prefix is a set of letters, which we add before the main word to make a new word.

البادئة هي مجموعة من الأحرف التي نضيفها قبل الكلمة الرئيسية لتكوين كلمة جديدة.

Some prefixes that are used to show the opposite are (un-, ir-, il-, and im-)

بعض البادئات التي تستخدم لتعطي عكس المعنى : (im- , il- , ir- , un-)

Prefix	ir-	il-	im-	un-
Usage الاستخدام	when the word begins with r عندما تبدأ الكلمة بحرف r.	when the word begins with l عندما تبدأ الكلمة بحرف l.	when the word begins with m or p عندما تبدأ الكلمة بحرف "m" أو "p"	with most words مع معظم الكلمات
Root word جذر الكلمة	responsible مسئول	legal قانوني	possible ممکن moral أخلاقي	happy سعيد usual معتاد well بخير fit لائق safe آمن
Opposite word عكس الكلمة	irresponsible غير مسئول	illegal غير قانوني	impossible مستحيل immoral غير أخلاقي	unhappy حزين unusual غير عادي unwell مريض unfit غير لائق unsafe غير آمن



Pop Quiz on Language Focus

يقوم التلميذ بأداء تدريب تلقائي للتقان القواعد اللغوية

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. We can add the prefix to make the opposite of "regular".

- a. im_ b. il_ c. ir_ d. un_

2. The prefix makes the opposite of "polite".

- a. un_ b. ir_ c. im_ d. il_

- Help your child know what a prefix is.
- Ask your child to choose the correct answer.

- ساعد طفلك أن يعرف ما هي البادئة.
- اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة

General Exercises

on Lesson 3
(Part 2)

موضوع
الاسماء
في نهاية
الكتاب

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

- The staff from a hospital turn the corridors into classrooms.
- The students become teachers in the hospital.
- The family members become the students.
- The families can't change a bandage at home.

T F

2 Read and match (A) with (B).

- | | | |
|---------------------|---|-------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. There are many | • | <input type="checkbox"/> a. often very crowded. |
| 2. He went to | • | <input type="checkbox"/> b. he got better. |
| 3. I learned how to | • | <input type="checkbox"/> c. patients at the hospital. |
| 4. The park is | • | <input type="checkbox"/> d. after patients. |
| 5. The staff look | • | <input type="checkbox"/> e. the hospital alone. |
| | | <input type="checkbox"/> f. change bandages. |

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

In a hospital in Bangalore, a city in southern India, there are many patients. The hospital treats patients from all over the country. With every patient, there are about ten family members. In India, it is unusual for a sick person to go to the hospital alone. Family usually go with their unwell relative.

This means that the hospital is often very crowded and busy. But instead of telling family members that they can't visit their sick relatives, the staff at this hospital are very wonderful. They have classes to teach the family to look after the sick person. For example, some people learn how to change bandages and others learn how to give injections.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

- The text gives us information about a in India.
a. school b. hospital c. park d. shop

- If a place is "crowded", there are people.
a. some b. many c. no d. a few

B. Answer the following questions.

- What useful things can family members do to help their sick relatives ?
.....
- Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence.
.....

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

- treats - - hospital - sick - many - people.
.....
- visit - their - every day - - friend - sick.
.....
- learns - how - - injections - to - give.
.....
- in - are - the - - India - hospitals ?
.....

5 Punctuate the following.

- which country is this hospital in
.....
- some people learn how to change bandages
.....

6 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

A special hospital

Guiding elements :

- treat
- crowded

مجاب عنه
في نهاية
الكتاب



Vocabulary

Key vocabulary ★ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

sunburn	ضربة شمس - حروق الشمس	treatment	علاج
sunscreen	كريم واقى من أشعة الشمس	wound	جرح
pills	أقراص دواء	healing	الشفاء
bacteria	بكتريا	injury	إصابة

Extra vocabulary

skin	جلد	scientists	علماء
medical care	عناية طبية	jar	برطمان
illnesses	أمراض	substance	مادة
cupboard	خزانة	safe	امن
maybe = perhaps	ربما	treating	علاج
recently	حديثاً / مؤخراً		

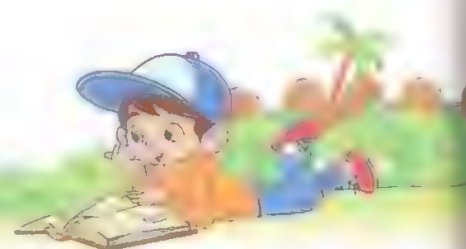
Conjugation of verbs

فعل في الافعال

Regular

Irregular

Present	Past	Present	Past
kill يقتل	killed	cut يقطع - يجرع	cut
heal يُشفى/يلتئم	healed	know يعرف	knew
contain يحتوى	contained	put يضع	put
mix يخلط	mixed		
damage يدمر	damaged		
happen يحدث	happened		



Notes for parents

• Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

• ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددهم.

Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

- get better يتحسن
- use as يستخدم مثل
- make you ill يصيبك بالمرض

★ Main points on listening and reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

- Honey is also used as a treatment for some injuries and illnesses. يُستخدم العسل كعلاج لبعض الإصابات والأمراض أيضاً.
- Doctors have used honey for thousands of years. استخدم الأطباء العسل لآلاف السنين.
- Some types of honey can kill bacteria. بعض أنواع العسل بإمكانها قتل البكتيريا.



Pip Quiz on Vocabulary

يقوم التلميذ بأداء تدريب تلقائي على الكلمات السابقة بعد قراءتها

★ Read and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

- I use to protect my skin on the beach.
a. sun b. sunscreen c. honey d. bandages
- She took two for her headache.
a. pins b. pills c. beds d. pots
- You need to take the medicine for your wounds.
a. heating b. heading c. healing d. meeting

★ Study these words.

ادرس هذه الكلمات.

Word الكلمة	Meaning المعنى
heal	to get better يتحسن
bacteria	very small things that can make you ill أشياء صغيرة جداً تستطيع أن تجعلك مريض
treatment	medical care to help you get better عناية طبية تساعدك في التحسن
wound	an injury that damages your skin إصابة تدمر جلدك

- Ask your child to read and choose the correct answer.
- Help your child read and identify the meaning of the words

• اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويختار الإجابة الصحيحة
• ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويعرف على معاني الكلمات

Look, read and learn.

Do you like honey? Perhaps you enjoy eating it for **breakfast**⁽¹⁾. Or maybe you enjoy it in a sweet basbousa? But did you know that honey isn't only a food? It is also used as a **treatment**⁽²⁾ for some **injuries**⁽³⁾ and **illnesses**⁽⁴⁾.



Check Vocabulary

- (1) وجبة الإفطار
(2) علاج
(3) إصابات / أمراض
(4) حروق
(5) سعال
(6) دولا / خزانة
(7) ركة

In some countries, honey has been used by doctors for thousands of years. It was first used to treat **wounds** by Egyptian doctors around 5,000 years ago. Recently, scientists have tried to find out exactly why honey is so good for **healing** wounds and treating illnesses.

Scientists know that some types of honey contain things that can help to kill bacteria. This helps wounds to heal more quickly. **You must be careful, however. The honey that doctors use is a special honey only that is safe to use as a treatment.** So, if you have a jar of honey in your **cupboard**, you can mix it with milk to make your cough better, but don't put it on your cut **finger**!

هل تسبب العسل؟ أم ربما تستخدم به فوجبة الإفطار أو في العسل أن يستعمل في علاج الجروح أو كعلاج للأمراض. لقد استخدم الأطباء العسل لألاف السنين في بعض الدول. تم استخدام العسل في علاج الجروح أو كعلاج للأمراض. يعرف العلماء أن بعض أنواع العسل تحتوي على أشياء لقتل البكتيريا وهذا يساعد أن تشفى الجروح بسرعة. ومع كل هذا يجب أن تكون حذر. أن العسل الذي يستخدمه الأطباء هو نوع خاص آمن أن يستخدم في العلاج. لذلك إذا كان لديك برطمان من العسل في خزانة المطبخ يمكن أن تخلطه مع لبن لكي يتحسن سعالك ولكن لا تضعه على ركبته الممزوجة.

Notes for parents

- Help your child look at the picture, read and text and learn

General Exercises

on Lesson 4

(Part 1)

1 Listen and complete.

- Bees have five eyes and six
- They can see all except red.
- In one collection trip, a bee visits 50 to 100
- It takes 21 days for an to develop into an adult bee.

2 Read and match (A) with (B).

- | | |
|---------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. Bacteria can | a. my cut knee. |
| 2. You can mix honey with | b. make you ill. |
| 3. I put a bandage on | c. can kill bacteria. |
| 4. Some types of honey | d. that damages your skin. |
| 5. A wound is an injury | e. to get better. |
| | f. milk to make your cough better. |

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

In some countries, honey has been used by doctors for thousands of years. It was first used to treat wounds by Egyptian doctors around 5,000 years ago. Recently, scientists have tried to find out exactly why honey is so good for healing wounds and treating illnesses.

Scientists know that some types of honey contain things that can help to kill bacteria. This helps wounds to heal more quickly. **You must be careful, however.**

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The main idea of the text is about
a. cough b. honey c. milk d. bacteria

2. The underlined word "heal" means
 a. help b. train c. find out d. get better

8. Answer the following questions.

3. Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence.

4. Why is honey so good for healing wounds?

4. Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. thousands of – used – Doctors – honey – years – for.

2. a – have – – of – honey – jar.

3. the sweetest – Earth – substance – is – Honey – on

4. honey – , Omar – like – you – Do ?

5. Punctuate the following.

1. you enjoy eating honey for breakfast

2. what do you use honey for

6. Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

Honey

Guiding elements

- bees
- treatment

Phonics

★ Listen and repeat. استمع وكرر.



1 The letter "f" makes the / f / sound. (Voiceless)



frog ضفدع

scarf وشاح

fruit فاكهة

How to make the / f / sound

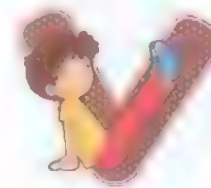
1. Rest your top teeth on your lower lip.

ضع أسنانك العلوية على شفتك السفلية.

2. Blow, but don't use your voice!

انفخ، لكن لا تستخدم صوتك!

2 The letter "v" makes the / v / sound. (Voiced)



vegetables خضروات television تليفزيون vet طبيب بيطري

How to make the / v / sound

1. Rest your top teeth on your lower lip. ضع أسنانك العلوية على شفتك السفلية.

2. Blow, but do use your voice!

انفخ، لكن استخدم صوتك!

• Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددها.

• Help your child distinguish between the / f / and / v / sounds while reading and writing.

- ساعد طفلك أن يميز بين أصوات / f / و / v / عند القراءة والكتابة.

★ Listen, read and learn. استمع، اقرأ وتعلم.

/f/	/v/
fan مروحة	van شاحنة صغيرة
leaf ورقة شجر	leave يترك / يغادر
ferry عبارة نهرية	very جدًا
few قليل	view منظر طبيعي
safe آمن	save يحفظ / يدخر
life حياة	live يعيش

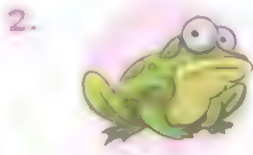


Pop Quiz on Theme 3

1 Look and write the missing sound.



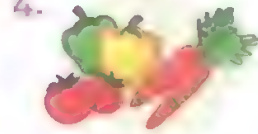
_ an



_ rog



_ ruit



_ egetables

2 Look, read and complete.

1. We like watching tele_ision.



2. Leave the lovely lea – on the tree.



3. The ferry is _ery _ast.



Notes for parents

• Help your child listen to the words, read and learn.

1. Ask your child to look at the pictures and write the missing sound in each word.

2. Ask your child to look at the pictures, read and complete the missing letters.

• اطلب من طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور ويكتب الصوت الناقص في كل كلمة.

• اطلب من طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور، يقرأ ويكمل بالحروف الناقصة.

Lesson

4

Part 3

CLIL : Math Bar charts

★ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

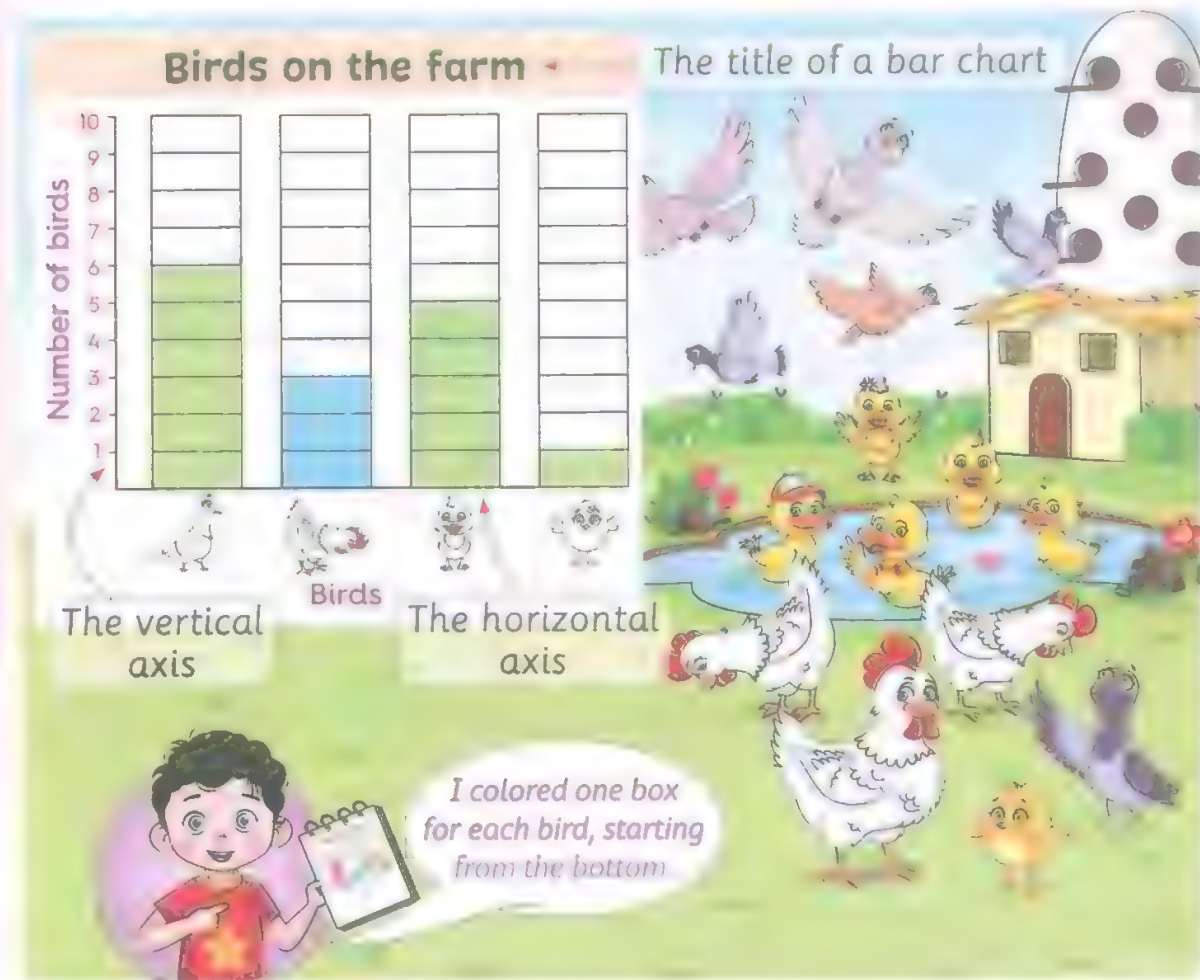
Vocabulary

free-time وقت فراغ	bar chart شريط الرسم البياني
activity نشاط	taking long walks المشي لمسافات طويلة

★ Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.

• A bar chart is a way of showing information.

الرسم البياني هو وسيلة لعرض المعلومات.



- Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.
- Help your child to understand the bar chart

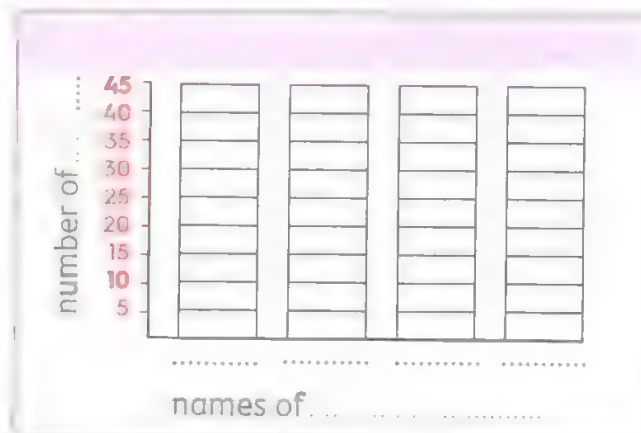
- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددها.
- ساعد طفلك أن يفهم شريط الرسم البياني



Pop Quiz on Math

1 Use the table to make a bar chart and answer the questions.

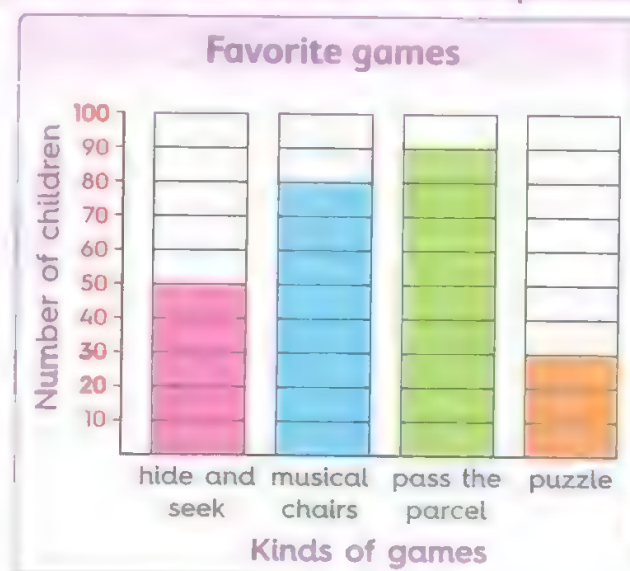
Favorite food	
Food	Number of students
basbousa	20
pizza	45
burger	35
cheese	30



- Which kind of food is liked the least ?
- Which kind of food is liked the most ?

2 Complete the table using the bar chart and answer the questions.

Favorite games	
Games	Number of children
hide and seek	
musical chairs	
pass the parcel	
puzzle	



- How many children liked musical chairs ?
- How many people liked hide and seek and pass the parcel ?

Notes for parents

1. Ask your child to make a bar chart and answer the questions.
اطلب من طفلك أن يصنع مخطط الرسم البياني السريطي ويجب عن الأسئلة
2. Ask your child to complete the table using the bar chart then answer the questions.
اطلب من طفلك أن يكمل الجدول مستخدماً شريط الرسم البياني ثم اجب عن الأسئلة

Lessons 5&6

► Writing
► Project



Vocabulary

★ Listen and repeat. استمع وكرر

Key vocabulary

balanced diet	نظام غذائي متوازن	experts	خبراء
healthy	صحي	important	مهم

Extra vocabulary

useful	مفيد	presentation	عرض
first-aid kit	صندوق الإسعافات الأولية	soap	صابون
scissors	مقص	insect bite cream	كريم لدغة الحشرات
cleaning wipes	مناديل التطهير	medical gloves	قفازات طبية
rubber bands	أربطة مطاطية	safety pins	دبابيس الأمان
list	قائمة	exercise	تمرين - تدريب

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present	Past	Present	Past
stay يبقى/يمكث	stayed	need يحتاج	needed
exercise يتدرب / يتمرّن	exercised	focus يركز	focused
move يتحرك	moved	pack يجهز الحقيرة	packed

Important expressions and prepositions

- spend time with friends يقضي وقت مع الأصدقاء
- get enough sleep الحصول على قسط كاف من النوم
- best ways to أفضل الطرق لـ
- responsible for مسئول عن
- plenty of الكثير من
- in addition to بالإضافة إلى
- good for جيد لـ

• Help your child listen to the words and repeat them

• ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويكررهم

- It's important to eat healthy food.
من المهم تناول الطعام الصحي.
- It's important to have a balanced diet.
من المهم أن تتبع نظام غذائي متوازن.
- Playing sport with friends is a good way to exercise.
لعب الرياضة مع الأصدقاء طريقة جيدة للتمرين.
- You should get between eight and nine hours of sleep every night.
يجب عليك النوم لمدة ما بين ٨ - ٩ ساعات كل ليلة.
- Spending time with your friends is good for your health.
قضاء الوقت مع الأصدقاء جيد لصحتك.

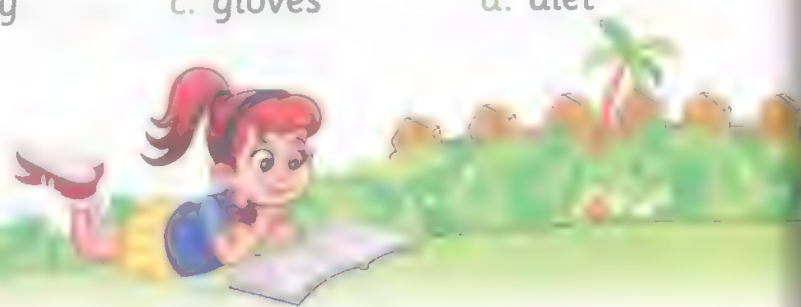


Pop Quiz on vocabulary

يقوم التلميذ بأداء تدريب تلقائي على الكلمات السابقة بعد قراءتها

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

- You should have a diet.
a. fat b. balanced c. fast d. high
- Vegetables are very food.
a. healthy b. friendly c. bad d. health
- Doctors wear medical at the hospital.
a. light b. way c. gloves d. diet



Notes for parents

• Ask your child to read and choose the correct answer.

• اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويختار الإجابة الصحيحة.

★ Look, listen and read.

انظر، استمع واقرأ.

تدرب على ١٨ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع Pop Quiz

My presentation today is about staying healthy. It is really important to eat healthy foods like fruit and vegetables and to have a **balanced diet**⁽¹⁾. There are lots of other things that we can do to look after our health.

العرض الذي أقدمه اليوم يدور حول البقاء بصحة جيدة. من المهم حقًا تناول الأطعمة الصحية مثل الفاكهة والخضروات واتباع نظام غذائي متوازن. هناك الكثير من الأشياء الأخرى التي يمكننا القيام بها للاعتناء بصحتنا.

You should do some exercise every day. It's very important to keep your body moving. Playing sport at school or with friends is a good way to exercise.

Check Vocabulary

(١) نظام غذائي

(٢) حياء

(٣) صحي

يجب عليك القيام ببعض التمارين كل يوم. من المهم جدًا أن تحافظ على حركة جسمك. ممارسة الرياضة في المدرسة أو مع الأصدقاء طريقة جيدة للتمرين.

Another thing you can do is to go to bed early. It's important to get enough sleep. **Experts**⁽²⁾ think you should get between eight and nine hours of sleep every night.

شيء آخر يمكنك القيام به هو الذهاب إلى الفراش مبكرًا. من المهم الحصول على قسط كافٍ من النوم. يعتقد الخبراء أنك يجب أن تنام ما بين ثمانى وتسع ساعات كل ليلة.

In addition to this, one of the best ways to stay **healthy**⁽³⁾ is to spend time with your friends. It's not only your body that you need to keep healthy, you should make time to focus on being happy, too. Spending time with your family and friends is a great way to do this.

بالإضافة إلى ذلك، فإن أحد أفضل الطرق للبقاء بصحة جيدة هو قضاء الوقت مع أصدقائك. جسمك ليس الشيء الوحيد الذى تحتاج إلى الحفاظ عليه صحيًا، يجب أن تخصص وقتًا للتركيز على سعادتك أيضًا. يعد قضاء وقت مع عائلتك وأصدقائك طريقة رائعة للقيام بذلك.

Demonstrate understanding of specific details.

LEARN

1. It is important to eat foods.
a. healthy b. unhealthy c. fast d. health

PRACTICE

2. You should do some every day.
a. exercise b. sleep c. games d. friends

• Help your child look at the picture, listen and read the text.

• ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصورة، يستمع ويقرأ النص.

General Exercises

LESSONS 5&6

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

1. It's important to eat healthy foods like chips and cookies.
2. You should have a balanced diet.
3. You shouldn't do some exercise every day.
4. It's very important to keep your body moving.

2 Listen and complete.

1. We get energy from the _____ that we eat.
2. There are _____ different types of food.
3. We must have a _____ diet to keep healthy.
4. Our body needs protein to _____ and become stronger.

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

- | | |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Playing sport is a good | <input type="checkbox"/> a. is good for your health. |
| 2. You should sleep for | <input type="checkbox"/> b. on being happy. |
| 3. What do you need | <input type="checkbox"/> c. in the first-aid kit? |
| 4. Make time to focus | <input type="checkbox"/> d. eight hours every night. |
| 5. Spending time with your friends | <input type="checkbox"/> e. eat healthy food. |
| | <input type="checkbox"/> f. way to exercise. |

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. to stay – healthy – What – do – you – can ?

2. enough – get – to – important – It's – sleep.

3. food – healthy – to eat – is it – important – Why ?

4. should – Why – some – do – every day – exercise.

5 Punctuate the following.

1. what could they do better
2. they are good at playing sport

6 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

Staying healthy

Guiding questions:

- What things can we do to look after our health ?
- What are the best ways to stay healthy ?

TEST YOUR SKILLS

At the doctor's



If you got ● you need to revise the unit again on the next page.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على ● غير جيد فقم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في الصفحة التالية.

My Dictation

قياس مدى إتقان المفردات اللغوية

1 Read and write the meaning.

اقرأ واكتب المعنى.

- A. freshwater
glacier
blind
bandage
trunk

ألم في المعدة
دواء
مفصل
ملعب
حلق

My Reading

2 Read and tick (✓).

اقرأ وضع علامة (✓).

- He has a/an His tooth hurts.
☐ toothache ☐ earache
☐ stomachache
- The Red Sea has water.
☐ fresh ☐ salt ☐ honey
- The treats patients from all over the world.
☐ school ☐ office
☐ hospital

My Language

3 Read and correct the underlined words.. اقرأ وصحح الكلمات التي تحتها خط

- I has a camera.
- Does she has any chocolate cake ?
- She have a dog.

My Writing

4 Write a paragraph from 4-6 sentences about :

"Water"

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤ - ٦ جمل عن المياه.

My Project

5 Make a poster about how to stay healthy.

قم بتلوين الدائرة باللون المناسب لمستواك.

Review on unit 8



glacier lake river ocean



stream cold shoulder cough



toothache headache sore throat



stomachache



verb "have" with illnesses

- She has a stomachache.
- He doesn't have an earache.
- Do you have a backache?
- Yes, I do.
- No, I don't. I have a cold.

/ f /



frog



foot



scarf

/ v /



vegetables



television

Fresh water

Salt water



drinking water



the Red Sea



water for crops



the Mediterranean Sea



bathwater

• Help your child review unit 8.

• ساعد طفلك في مراجعة الوحدة الثامنة.

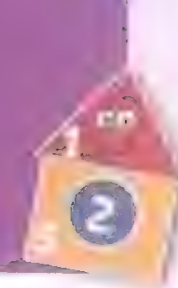


1. Reading & writing skills :

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
A local hospital	patients	In a hospital, there're many patients.
	treats	The hospital treats patients from all over the country.
	members	With every patient, there're about ten family members.
	crowded	The hospital is usually very crowded and busy.
	sick person	It's unusual for a sick person to go to the hospital alone.
The power of honey	honey	I like honey.
	breakfast	I enjoy eating it for breakfast.
	treatment	It's also used as a treatment for some injuries.
	doctors	Honey has been used by doctors for thousands of years.
	treat	It was first used to treat wounds by Egyptian doctors a long time ago.
How to stay healthy	balanced diet	It's really important to eat healthy foods to have a balanced diet.
	exercise	You should do some exercise every day.
	bed	You should go to bed early.
	sleep	You should get between eight and nine hours of sleep every night.
	friends	Spend time with your friends.
At the doctor's	well	I don't feel well.
	headache	I have a headache.
	cold	I have a cold.
	stay home	I'll stay home, sleep well and take the medicine.
	toothache	I don't have a toothache.
	hurts	My throat really hurts.

Sentence Building

تدرب على كيفية تكوين جملة



2. How to make a sentence :

٢. تعلم كيف تكون جملة

٧. الجمل الخبرية

1. didn't – ankle – I – my – hurt.
2. cut – last week – knee – his – He.

	فاعل	فعل	. باقى الجملة
1			my ankle.
2			

1. the – call – dentist – Don't.
2. eight – fresh water – glasses – Drink – of – a day.

٨. الجمل الأمرية

	Don't	مصدر الفعل	. باقى الجملة
1	Don't		
2			

٩. الجمل الاستفهامية

(أ) السؤال بـ (كلمة استفهام .. ؟)

1. stay – healthy – can – you – How ?
2. does – Where – hurt – it ?

	كلمة الاستفهام	فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسى	? باقى السؤال
1					
2					

(ب) السؤال بـ (هل .. ؟)

1. water – to – drink – you – Do – like ?
2. a headache – have – Nader – Does ?

	فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسى	? باقى السؤال
1				
2				

3. Writing skills :

٣. تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة.
قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة (٢٧ جمل).

1 Feeling ill

I can't go to school today⁽¹⁾. I don't feel well⁽²⁾. I have a sore throat⁽³⁾. My throat really hurts⁽⁴⁾. I can't talk⁽⁵⁾. Mom is going to call the doctor⁽⁶⁾. I will stay in bed⁽⁷⁾.

2 Water

I like drinking water⁽⁸⁾. We should drink 8 glasses of fresh water a day⁽⁹⁾. The water is important for our health⁽¹⁰⁾. The water in the River Nile is fresh water⁽¹¹⁾. We can't drink the water in the sea⁽¹²⁾. The sea water is salt water⁽¹³⁾.

3 Describing the elephant

I touched the side of the elephant⁽¹⁴⁾. It's very tall and very strong⁽¹⁵⁾. It's like a wall⁽¹⁶⁾. The elephant's back leg is round and strong, like a tree trunk⁽¹⁷⁾. The elephant's trunk is long and flexible⁽¹⁸⁾. The elephant's tusk is hard, long, and smooth⁽¹⁹⁾.

4 At the doctor's

I fell over in the playground⁽²⁰⁾. I have a cut on my arm⁽²¹⁾. It really hurts⁽²²⁾. The doctor saw it⁽²³⁾. She cleaned it⁽²⁴⁾. She put a bandage on it⁽²⁵⁾. She gave me medicine⁽²⁶⁾. She asked me to rest and eat healthy food⁽²⁷⁾.

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Adam usually goes camping with his friends.
2. Adam goes camping in the winter.
3. Desert is very cold in the day.
4. They need a compass and a map.

2 Listen and complete.

1. You should do
2. It's very important to keep your healthy.
3. There are a lot of different sports you can
4. You can play football, basketball and tennis in the

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

- | | | |
|--------------------------|---|---------------------------|
| 1. When your head hurts, | • | a. I have a stomachache. |
| 2. I ate something bad. | • | b. I have an earache. |
| 3. The water in rivers | • | c. helps you get better. |
| 4. The elephant is | • | d. you have a headache. |
| 5. Treatment | • | e. is called fresh water. |
| | | f. an enormous animal. |

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

To stay healthy, it's very important to eat a variety of food, specially fruit and vegetables. It is very important to have good breakfast in the morning. You shouldn't have sweets every day.

Most of our body is water, so it is necessary to drink plenty of water every day. You shouldn't drink a lot of fizzy drinks because they aren't good for your health. You shouldn't watch TV or play on the computer more than one hour a day.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. You shouldn't eat every day.
a. fruits b. vegetables c. sweets d. seafood
2. The underlined word "stay" means
a. give b. stop c. break d. keep

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Summarize the second paragraph in one sentence.
4. What should you do to stay healthy ? Mention two.

5. Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. tree – leaves – This – has – lovely.
2. did – find – out – men – what – the blind ?
3. honey – bacteria – types of – some – can – kill.
4. throat – sore – a – you – have ?

6. Punctuate the following.

1. it's important to eat healthy food
2. What s the matter, Aya

7. Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

Water

Guiding elements

• fresh water

• salt water

مجاب عنه
في نهاية
الكتاب

UNIT

9

My favorite animal

حيواني المفضل



Test your skills. في نهاية الوحدة. | التقييمات الشهرية في كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية.

Reading and Writing Skill. في نهاية الوحدة. | Dictation. في نهاية الوحدة.

تدريبات للأهر الشريف في نهاية الكتاب.

Aims of unit nine :

In this unit I will

• listen, read, research, and write about animals.

- استمع، اقرأ، أبحث وأكتب عن الحيوانات.

• listen and read about a trip to a wildlife park.

- استمع وأقرأ عن رحلة قصيرة إلى حديقة الحياة البرية.

• learn how to say /w/ and /v/ sounds.

- اتعلم كيف أقول أصوات /w/ ، /v/.

الأهداف العامة للوحدة التاسعة :

في هذه الوحدة سوف

• write an email about an unusual animal.

- أكتب رسالة بريد إلكتروني عن حيوان استثنائي.

• research and make an infographic about animals in a habitat.

- أبحث وأصنع مخطط معلومات بياني عن حيوانات في موطن.

Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

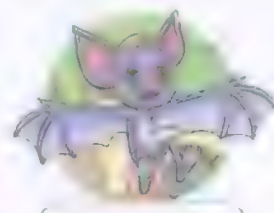
★ Look, listen and repeat. انظر، استمع وردد.



kangaroo كنغر



panda دب الباندا



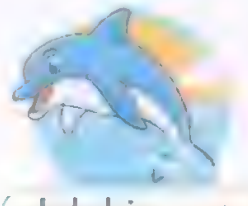
bat خفاش



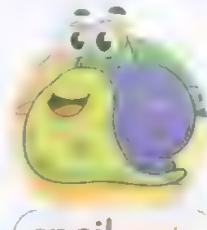
lion



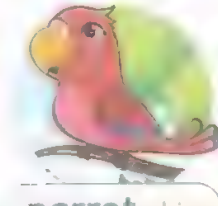
penguin طائر البطريق



dolphin دولفين



snail حلزون



parrot ببغاء

Extra vocabulary

strong	مستقيم	group	مجموعة
shell	صدفة	bamboo	نبات الخيزران
colorful	زاهي الألوان	wonderful = awesome	رائع
ocean	محيط	fridge	ثلاجة
upside down	رأساً على عقب (مقلوب)	dark	ظلام
wildlife	حياة برية	ice	ثلج
pouch	كيس / جيب (الكنغر)	snow	جليد
Australia	أستراليا	special	خاص / مميز
friendly	ودود	China	الصين
Africa	قارة أفريقيا	inside	بالداخل
rainforest	غابة مطيرة	summary	ملخص
little	قليل / صغير السن		

Notes for parents

• Help your child look, listen to the words and repeat them.

• ساعد طفلك أن ينظر، يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددها.

Flamingos eat with their heads upside down. They use their tongue to catch their food.

• طيور الفلامنغو تاكل ورؤوسها رأساً على عقب (مقلوبة). يستخدمون لسانهم لالتقاط طعامهم.

Conjugation of verbs

أفعال الفعل

Regular

Irregular

Present

Past

Present

Past

stay	يبقى	stayed	sit	يجلس	sat
talk	يتحدث	talked	fly	يطير	flew
repeat	يردد	repeated	feed	يطعم	fed
jump	يقفز	jumped	hide	يختبئ	hid

Important expressions and prepositions

عبارات مهمة و介词

• day out	يوم بالخارج	• go near	يقترّب
• said .. for	قال .. لـ	• look so cool!	يبدو لطيف جدًا
• It sounds amazing!	يبدو مذهلاً	• through the trees	عبر الأشجار
• jump on	يقفز على	• do a project	يقوم بمشروع
• swim in a group	يسبح في مجموعة	• It's so sweet!	إنه رائع جدًا

★ Main points on listening and reading tasks

نقاط هامة علي نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

- Yesterday, Ramez went to a wildlife park with his family.
ذهب رامي بالأمس إلى منتزه الحيوانات البرية مع عائلته.
- He enjoyed it very much.
لقد استمتع بها كثيرًا.
- They saw lots of different animals like lions, kangaroos, and penguins.
لقد رأوا الكثير من الحيوانات المختلفة مثل الأسود، حيوانات الكنغر وطيور البطريق.
- He saw his favorite birds, the parrot.
رأى طيوره المفضلة، الببغاء.
- He was a bit sad because he didn't see the bats and he's doing a project on them at school.
لقد كان حزينًا قليلًا لأنه لم يرى الخفافيش وهو يقوم بعمل مشروع عنهم في المدرسة.

★ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The is a very dangerous animal.
a. rabbit b. lion c. monkey d. parrot
2. The snails have hard and no legs.
a. arms b. tails c. shells d. hair
3. Adel is very, he helps all his friends.
a. ugly b. friendly c. lazy d. angry
4. We keep our food in the to be cool.
a. oven b. television c. fridge d. closet

★ Read, learn and identify.

اقرأ، تعلم وتعرف.

- 1 It lives in the garden. It has a shell. It doesn't have legs or arms. It's a snail.
يعيش في الحديقة. لديه صدفة. ليس لديه أرجل أو أذرع.
إنه حلزون.



- 2 It lives in Australia. It jumps on two legs. It's a kangaroo.
يعيش في أستراليا. يقفز على ساقين. إنه كنغر.



- 3 It flies at night. It sleeps upside down on trees. It's a bat.
يطير في الليل. ينام رأسًا على عقب (مقلوب) على الأشجار.
إنه خفاش.



- It lives on ice and snow. It's black and white. It can swim, but it can't fly. It's a penguin.
يعيش على الثلج والجليد. إنه أبيض وأسود اللون. يستطيع السباحة لكنه لا يستطيع الطيران. إنه بطريق.

- 5 It's a bird. It's very beautiful and colorful. It lives in the rainforest. It's a parrot.
إنه طائر. إنه جميل جدًا وملون. يعيش في الغابات المطيرة.
إنه ببغاء.



- It lives in Africa. It's a very big cat. It's very strong. It's a lion.
يعيش في أفريقيا. إنه قطعة كبيرة جدًا. إنه قوي جدًا. إنه أسد.

- 7 It's very friendly. It swims in a group with its family in the ocean. It's a dolphin.
إنه ودود جدًا. يسبح في مجموعه مع عائلته. إنه دولفين.



- It lives in China. It eats bamboo. It's big, and black and white. It's a panda.
يعيش في الصين. يأكل نبات الخيزران (البامبو). إنه كبير، ولونه أسود وأبيض. إنه دب الباندا.

Notes for parents

- Ask your child to read and choose the correct answer.
- Help your child read the sentences, learn and identify different animals.

• اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويختار الإجابة الصحيحة.

• ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ الجمل، يتعلم ويتعرف على حيوانات مختلفة.

Listening and Reading

Listen, read and role-play.

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار.

تدرب على من قطع الفهم وبصوت الاستماع



Ramez : Hi! I had a wonderful day out yesterday with my family. أهلاً! قضيت يوماً رائعاً في الخارج مع عائلتي.



Ayman : Where did you go ?



Ramez : I went to the new wildlife park – it was awesome!



Ayman : What did you see ? Could you go near the lions ? ماذا رأيت ؟ هل استطعت أن تقترب من الأسود ؟



Ramez : No, we stayed in the car. But we could see them through the trees. The kangaroos were interesting, too. When they are little, they can sit inside their mom's pouch – it's so sweet!

لا، بقينا في السيارة. لكن تمكنا من رؤيتهم خلال الأشجار. كانت حيوانات الكنغر مثيرة للاهتمام أيضاً. عندما يكونوا صغاراً، يمكنهم الجلوس داخل حُب الكنغر الأم - هذا رائع جداً!



Ayman : What birds did you see? ما الطيور التي رأيتها ؟



Ramez : Lots, but my favorites were the parrots. They were so beautiful and they could talk! We said some words for them to repeat!

كثيراً، لكن المفضلين لي كانوا طيور الببغاء. كان الببغاء جميل جداً ويمكنهم التحدث! قلنا لهم بعض الكلمات ليرددوها!



Ayman : What about animals that like the cold? Did you see any?

وماذا عن الحيوانات التي تحب الجو البارد؟ هل رأيت أي منهم ؟



Ramez : Yes, penguins! They were in a special place inside. It was cold, like a fridge. We fed them some fish! I love penguins – they can swim so well and they look so cool!

نعم، طيور البطريق! كانوا في مكان خاص بالداخل. كان المكان بارد مثل الثلاجة. لقد أطعمناهم بعض الأسماك! أنا أحب طيور البطريق. يمكنهم السباحة جيداً وتبدو رائعة جداً!



Ayman : Wow! Was there anything you wanted to see but couldn't?

واو! هل كان هناك أي شيء أردت رؤيته ولكنك لم تستطع؟



Ramez : The bats. I'm doing a project on bats at school, so I really wanted to see them! But they were all hiding and I couldn't see them in the dark!

الخفافيش. أقوم بمشروع عن الخفافيش في المدرسة، لذلك أردت حقاً رؤيتهم! لكنهم كانوا كذلك كلهم مختبئون ولم أتمكن من رؤيتهم في الظلام!



Ayman : Oh well, it sounds amazing! I've got to feed my rabbit now – that's the most wildlife I'll see today!

حسناً، يبدو الأمر رائعاً! يجب أن أطعم أرنبى الآن - هذا هو أقصى ما يمكنني رؤيته من الحيوانات البرية التي سوف أراها اليوم!

Determine the meaning of words. حدد معنى الكلمات.

LEARN

1. The word little in the text means

a. old

b. new

c. young

d. tall

PRACTICE

2. The underlined word amazing means

a. ugly

b. wonderful

c. bad

d. boring

General Exercises

on Lesson 1

الصفحة
الرابعة
في نهاية الكتاب

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Noha is interested in social media.
2. The kangaroo lives in Australia.
3. The penguins live in hot places.
4. Penguins can swim.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

2 Listen and complete.

1. Ramez went to a park yesterday.
2. They saw lots of different animals like and kangaroos.
3. His favorite birds are the
4. Ramez didn't see the , so he was a bit sad.

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

- | | | |
|---------------------|---|---------------------------------------------------|
| 1. What do pandas | • | <input type="checkbox"/> a. upside down on trees. |
| 2. The snail has | • | <input type="checkbox"/> b. hot food ? |
| 3. Ramy went to | • | <input type="checkbox"/> c. snow and ice. |
| 4. Bats sleep | • | <input type="checkbox"/> d. a shell. |
| 5. Penguins live on | • | <input type="checkbox"/> e. eat ? |
| | | <input type="checkbox"/> f. a wildlife park. |

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. are – birds – the parrots – My – favorite.

2. the penguins – fish – some – fed – She.

3. a very – The – cat – lion – is – big.

4. park – I – the – went to – wildlife – new.

5 Punctuate the following.

1. where did ayman go yesterday ?

2. the kangaroo lives in Australia

6 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

Your favorite animals

Guiding questions :

- Where do they live ?
- What do they look like ?

الصفحة
الرابعة
في نهاية
الكتاب

What could you do?

Language Focus

Vocabulary

★ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Vocabulary

Italian	إيطالي	cousin	عم / خال
chess	شطرنج	amazed	دهش
busy	مشغول	fast	سريع
able to	قادر على	German	ألماني
French	لغة فرنسية	quickly	بسرعة
France	فرنسا	basketball	كرة سلة
month	شهر	age	عمر

Language Focus

can / can't

1
Expressing
ability and
inability in present
التعبير عن القدرة
وعدم القدرة في
زمن المضارع

When we talk about something we are or aren't able to do in the present, we use "can" or "can't".
عندما نتحدث عن شيء قادرين أو غير قادرين على القيام به في زمن المضارع، نستخدم "can" بمعنى يستطيع و "can't" بمعنى لا يستطيع.

subject → can / cannot (can't) + inf. مصدر الفعل
فاعل

ex. • I can play basketball. • I can't speak Italian.

2
Asking
about ability
in present
السؤال عن القدرة
في زمن المضارع

To make questions, we change the order of the words (to start with can).

لتكوين أسئلة، نقوم بتغيير ترتيب كلمات الجملة ونبدأ بـ "can".

A. YES / NO Question السؤال بمعنى هل ... ؟

Can + subject + الفاعل + inf. ?

ex. Can you climb a tree ? - Yes, I can. - No, I can't.

Notes for parents

• Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

• ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددهم.

B. wh-question السؤال بكلمات الاستفهام

question word + can + subject فاعل + inf مصدر الفعل ؟

ex. • What can you do, Ahmed ? • I can run fast.

could / couldn't

1
Expressing
ability and
inability in past
التعبير عن القدرة
وعدم القدرة في
زمن الماضي

When we talk about something we were / weren't able to do in the past, we use could / couldn't.

عندما نتحدث عن شيء كنا قادرين أو غير قادرين على القيام به في الماضي، نستخدم "could" بمعنى استطاع أو "couldn't" بمعنى لم يستطع.

subject → could / couldnot (couldn't) + inf. مصدر الفعل
فاعل

ex. • I couldn't take the bus so I had to walk.

2
Asking
about ability
in the past
السؤال عن القدرة
في زمن الماضي

To make questions, we change the order of the words (to start with could).

لتكوين أسئلة نقوم بتغيير ترتيب كلمات الجملة وتبدأ بـ "Could".

A. YES / NO Question السؤال بمعنى هل ... ؟

Could + subject الفاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل ؟

ex. Could you ride a bike when you were three ?
• Yes, I could. • No, I couldn't.

B. wh-question السؤال بكلمات الاستفهام

question word + could + subject فاعل + inf مصدر الفعل ؟

ex. • What could you do when you were little ?
• I could swim well.

Notes for parents

We use (can / can't), (could / couldn't) with the infinitive without "to".
نستخدم "can / can't", "could / couldn't" مع صيغة المصدر بدون "to".

• Help your child talk about ability and inability in present and past.

• ساعد طفلك أن يتحدث عن القدرة وعدم القدرة في زمن المضارع والماضي.



Pop Quiz on Lesson 1

يقوم التلميذ بأداء تدريب تلقائي للتقنيات القواعد اللغوية

★ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Parrots can
a. flying b. fly c. flies d. to fly
- She drive a car. She takes the bus.
a. can b. can't c. couldn't d. were
- My brother count to 10 when he was two.
a. can b. couldn't c. can't d. isn't
- Last year, we travel to Africa.
a. can b. can't c. could d. were
- I couldn't say anything in German last year, but now I
a. can b. can't c. could d. couldn't
- Last year, he run very quickly, but now he can.
a. can't b. could c. couldn't d. can
- you play the piano when you were a child?
a. Can b. Could c. Couldn't d. Are
- Sorry, I help you with your homework. I'm busy.
a. can b. can't c. could d. couldn't



Notes for parents

• Ask your child to choose the correct answer.

• اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة.

Lesson

2

Part 2 ▶ The travelers and the tree



Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

★ Look and listen. انظر واستمع.



branch of
a tree فرع شجرة



shelter
مأوى



exhausted
مرهق



trunk of
a tree جذع شجرة

Extra vocabulary

fable	حكاية رمزية	value	قيمة / مكانة
land	أرض	wide	
famous	مشهور	nuts	مكسرات
rest	استراحة	travelers	
country	دولة	trader	
area	منطقة	field	ساحة / حقل
shade	ظل	idea	فكرة
breeze	نسيم	hungry	جائع
useless	عديم الفائدة	ungrateful	ناكر للجميل
comfortable	مريح	probably	محتمل
tired	متعب	dry	خاف
both	كلاهما	meeting point	مليقي / نقطة التقاء

• Help your child look at the pictures and listen to the words.

• ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور ويسمع إلى الكلمات.

Conjugation of verbs

Regular

Present	Past
rest يستريح	rested
enjoy يستمتع	enjoyed
save ينقذ	saved
thank يشكر	thanked

Irregular

Present	Past
give يعطي	gave
fall يسقط	fell
wake يستيقظ	woke
keep يحفظ	kept

Important expressions and prepositions

- move across يتحرك / ينتقل عبر
- fall asleep يستغرق سرياً في النوم
- look up ينظر لأعلى
- look around ينظر حول
- feel sorry يشعر بالحزن
- a meeting point for نقطة التقاء لـ
- wake up يستيقظ
- keep us cool تبقينا باردين
- neither of أي منهم

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
a breeze	is a little wind رياح خفيفة
useless	when something is useless, we can't use it عندما يكون شيء ما عديم الفائدة، لا نستطيع استخدامه
ungrateful	when someone is ungrateful, they don't thank others for doing something good عندما يكون شخص ما غير شاكر، لا يشكر الآخرين على فعل شيء جيد
comfortable	when something is comfortable, it's nice to sit on or wear عندما يكون شيء ما مريح، يكون الجلوس عليه أو ارتدائه لطيفاً
meeting point	is somewhere where people meet هو مكان حيث يلتقي الناس

Main points in listening and reading texts

نقاط هامة علي نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

- The tree was the only tree in a field. كانت هي الشجرة الوحيدة في الساحة.
- The travelers rested under the tree, where there's some shade. استراح المسافرين تحت الشجرة، حيث يوجد بعض الظل.
- Travelers enjoyed the shade and the cool breeze. لقد استمتع المسافرين بالظل والنسيم البارد.
- In the end, the travelers were sad about being unkind to the tree. في النهاية، كان المسافرين حزينين لأنهم كانوا غير عطوفين على الشجرة.

Listen and read. سماع واقرأ

The travelers and the tree (by Aesop)

Once there was a very big old tree in a hot, dry land⁽¹⁾. It had lived for many years. Its trunk was very wide and it had many green branches⁽²⁾. It was famous because it was the only tree where it lived, and it gave shelter⁽³⁾ and rest to hundreds of travelers⁽⁴⁾ as they moved across the country. It was near four towns and many villages in its area and was a meeting point for traders.

• Check Vocabulary

- (1) أرض
- (2) أغصان
- (3) مأوى
- (4) مسافرون

المسافرون والشجرة (إيسوب)
ذات يوم كانت هناك شجرة قديمة كبيرة جداً في أرض حارة وجافة. كانت تعيش منذ سنوات عديدة. كان جذعها عريضاً جداً وكان لها العديد من الأغصان الخضراء، كانت الشجرة مشهورة لأنها كانت الشجرة الوحيدة في هذا المكان، ولأنها كانت توفر المأوى والراحة لمئات المسافرين أثناء تنقلهم في جميع أنحاء البلاد وكانت بالقرب من أربع مدن والعديد من القرى في منطقتها. وكانت نقطة التقاء التجار.

One day two travelers, who were new to the area, were walking across the field and saw the tree. It was a very hot, dry

• Help your child listen and read the story.

• ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ القصة.

day and one of them said, "Let's stop under that tree, where there's some shade." "That's a very good idea," said his friend. They rested under the tree and drank some water. They then enjoyed the shade and the cool breeze. As they were exhausted, they soon fell asleep.

في أحد الأيام، كان مسافران جديان في المنطقة يسيران عبر الحقل ورأوا الشجرة. كان يومًا حارًا وجافًا جدًا وقال أحدهم، "دعنا نتوقف تحت تلك الشجرة، حيث يوجد بعض الظل." قال صديقه «أنها فكرة جيدة جدًا». استراحوا تحت الشجرة وشربوا بعض الماء، ثم استمتعوا بالظل والنسيم البارد، ولأنهم كانوا مرهقين، سرعان ما ناموا.

When they woke up, one of the travelers felt hungry. Neither of them had any food in their bags so they looked up at the branches of the tree. "This tree is **useless**", one of them said. "It has no food for us – there are no nuts or fruit on its branches." "But it has shade and it's keeping us cool," said the other.

عندما استيقظوا، شعر أحد المسافرين بالجوع. لم يكن لدى أي منهما طعام في حقائبهم لذا نظروا إلى أغصان الشجرة. قال أحدهم: "هذه الشجرة غير مفيدة. ليس لديها طعام لنا - ليس هناك مكسرات أو فاكهة على أغصانها" قال الآخر، و«لكن بها ظل الذي جعلنا نشعر بالبرودة».

But the tree heard the first traveler's words and it was angry. "How can you be so **ungrateful**? It said, "You came to me feeling hot and tired. I gave you a cool, **comfortable** place to sleep and I probably saved your life. Look, there is no other cool place to sleep near here." The travelers looked around them and saw the tree was correct and felt very sorry.

لكن الشجرة سمعت كلام المسافر الأول وكانت غاضبة. "كيف يمكنك أن تكون ناكر للجميل جدًا؟" قالت الشجرة: "أتيت إلى وأنت تشعر بالحر والتعب. أعطيتك مكانًا رائعًا ومريحًا للنوم وربما أنقذت حياتك. انظر، لا يوجد مكان رائع آخر للنوم بالقرب من هنا". نظر المسافرون حولهم ورأوا أن الشجرة على حق وشعروا بالأسف الشديد.

The Moral of the Story

المغزى (الدرس المستفاد من القصة)

- It's important to give value to small things in our lives.
من الضروري أن نعطي قيمة للأشياء الصغيرة في حياتنا.

General Exercises

on Lesson 2
(Parts 1&2)

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

- Trees are very important for our Earth.
- Trees give us carbon dioxide.
- People and animals need oxygen to breathe.
- Animals can make their homes in deserts.

T F
□ □
□ □
□ □
□ □

2 Read and match (A) with (B).

- A**
- When something is useless.
 - Can you
 - Why are trees
 - A breeze is
 - I couldn't read

- B**
- important for humans
 - a little wind
 - when I was two
 - we can't use it.
 - was amazed
 - to speak English

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

Once, there was a very big old tree in a hot, dry land. It had lived for many years. Its trunk was very **wide** and it had many green branches. It was famous because it was the only tree where it lived, and it gave shelter and rest to hundreds of travelers as they moved across the country.

One day, two travelers, who were new to the area, were walking across the field and saw the tree. It was a very hot, dry day and one of them said, "Let's stop under that tree, where there's some shade". "That's a very good idea", said his friend.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The underlined word "wide" means
a. little b. small c. big d. short

2. How was the weather ?

- a. Cool b. Warm c. Hot d. Cold

B. Answer the following questions.

3. How was the tree useful for the travelers ?

4. Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence.

4. Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. can – fast – run – The lion – very.
2. were – so – The travellers – ungrateful.
3. live – the shells – in – Snails – can.
4. Could – five – you – when – you – swim – were ?

5. Punctuate the following.

1. why is oxygen important for animals
2. bats can hide in the dark

6. Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

What could you do when you were three ?

Guiding words :

- run • speak



Vocabulary

★ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Key vocabulary

water vapor	بخار الماء	rainwater	أمطار
stream	جداول ماء (نهر صغير)	precipitation	ساقط / هطول
evaporation	عملية التبخر	water cycle	دورة المياه
groundwater	ماء جوفي	planet Earth	كوكب الأرض
faucet	صنبور	lake	بحيرة

Extra Vocabulary

sun	شمس	wind	رياح
clouds	سحب	sky	سما
ocean	محيط	process	عملية
rain	مطر	warm	دافئ
ground	أرض	air	هواء
cooler	أكثر برودة	form	صيغة / شكل
heavier	أثقل	smell	رائحة

Conjugation of verbs

Regular

Present	Past
call يدعى / يسمى	called
warm يدفئ	warmed
form يكون	formed
change يغير / يتغير	changed
start يبدأ	started

Irregular

Present	Past
become يصبح	became
rise يرتفع	rose
fall يسقط	fell

Important expressions and prepositions

- | | | | |
|--------------------|--------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| • come from | تأتي من | • in the sky | في السماء |
| • go straight into | يذهب مباشرة إلى | • on the ground | على الأرض |
| • in the air | في الهواء | • high up | عاليًا |
| • change back into | يتغير مرة أخرى إلى | • get cooler | يصبح أكثر برودة |

Main points in listening and reading texts

- Rain falls from the clouds. يسقط المطر من السحب.
- The sun warms some of the rainwater and it becomes water vapor. تدفئ الشمس بعضًا من مياه المطر وتتحول إلى بخار ماء.
- The vapor rises and changes into water and forms clouds. يرتفع البخار ويتحول إلى ماء ويشكل سُحب.
- The clouds get heavier and rain falls again. تزداد السحب ثقلًا ويتساقط المطر مرة أخرى.



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

يقوم التلميذ بأداء تدريب تلقائي على الكلمات السابقة بعد قراءتها

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

- There are many in the sky.
a. plants b. clouds c. fruits d. rocks
- My mom boiled water and I saw water
a. ice b. snow c. vapor d. stone
- When ice gets warm, it into water.
a. travels b. changes c. talks d. walks
- The Earth is the where we live.
a. flower b. plant c. planet d. pool

Notes for parents

• Ask your child to choose the correct answer.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويختار الإجابة الصحيحة.

★ Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

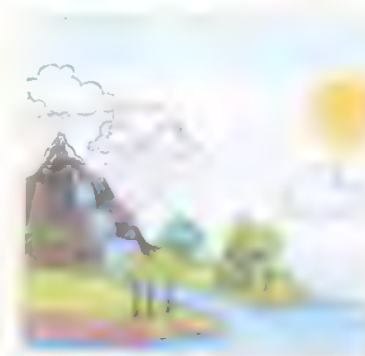
تدرب على 18 من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع Pop Quiz

Where does our water come from ?

Rain falls from clouds⁽¹⁾ in the sky. Some rainwater⁽²⁾ goes straight into the ground. But a lot of it goes into streams⁽³⁾, rivers, lakes, and then the ocean. This process is called precipitation⁽⁴⁾.

Some of the rainwater changes – the sun warms it and it becomes water vapor. This process is called evaporation⁽⁵⁾. We cannot see or smell the water vapor and it doesn't stay on the ground. It rises in the air and, as it gets cooler high up in the sky, it changes back into water and forms clouds. As the clouds become bigger, the water in them gets heavier.

When the water in the clouds gets heavier, it falls to the ground, and the cycle starts again.



Check Vocabulary

- (1) سحب
(2) مياه الأمطار
(3) مجرى / نيار
(4) تساقط
(5) سكب

من أين يأتي لنا الماء ؟

المطر يتساقط من السحب في السماء. تذهب بعض مياه الأمطار مباشرة إلى الأرض. لكن الكثير منها يذهب إلى الجداول والأنهار والبحيرات ثم المحيط. هذه العملية تسمى تساقط الأمطار، تتغير بعض مياه الأمطار - فالشمس تدفئها وتتحول إلى بخار ماء. هذه العملية تسمى "التبخّر". لا يمكننا رؤية أو شم بخار الماء ولا يبقى على الأرض. يرتفع في الهواء، وعندما يصبح أكثر برودة في السماء، يتحول مرة أخرى إلى ماء ويشكل سحب. عندما تكبر السحب، يزداد الماء بداخلها. عندما يزداد وزن الماء في السحب، يسقط على الأرض، وتبدأ الدورة من جديد.

Demonstrate understanding of details

USARQ

1. Rain falls from clouds in the
a. moon b. sky c. sun d. clouds

PRACTICE

2. The sun the water and it becomes water vapor.
a. warms b. cools c. kills d. gets

• Help your child look at the picture, listen and read the text.

• ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصورة، يستمع ويقرأ النص.



Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

★ Look and listen. انظر واستمع.



traders



scribes



artisans (حرفيين)



nobles (النبلاء)



pharaoh



farmers



soldiers

Extra vocabulary

Ancient Egyptians	المصريين القدماء	society	مجتمع
person	شخص	closely	عن قرب
taxes	ضرائب	kingdom	مملكة
army	جيش	papyrus	نبات البردي
job	وظيفة	chariots	مركبة حربية قديمة
letters	حروف / رسائل	records	سجلات
order	أمر / طلب	jewelry	مجوهرات
materials	مواد	furniture	أثاث
uniform	زي	probably	محتمل
role	دور / وظيفة	ship	سفينة
goods	بضائع		

Notes for parents

• Help your child to look at the picture and listen to the words.

• ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور ويستمع إلى الكلمات.

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Irregular

Present	Past	Present	Past
collect	يجمع	collected	read
organize	ينظم	organized	wrote
train	يتدرب	trained	bought
produce	ينتج	produced	sold
rule	يحكم	ruled	ate

Important expressions and prepositions

- played important roles in لعب أدوار مهمة في
- work with يعمل مع
- look after يهتم بـ
- make into يحول إلى
- in charge مسئول عن
- pick out ينتقى
- I would like to be (job) أود أن أصبح (مهنة)

Read the jobs description اقرأ وصف الوظائف

Job الوظيفة	Description الوصف
farmers	They grew the food for everyone. لقد زرعوا الطعام للجميع.
scribes	They wrote everything for the people. لقد كتبوا كل شيء للناس.
traders	They bought and sold all the goods. قاموا بشراء وبيع جميع البضائع.
pharaoh	He ruled the country. حكم البلاد قديمًا.
soldiers	They kept Ancient Egyptians safe. لقد حافظوا على سلامة المصريين القدماء.

• Help your child read the jobs description.

• ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ وصف الوظائف.

- Lots of different people played important roles in Ancient Egyptian society.
الكثير من الأشخاص المختلفين أدوارًا مهمة في المجتمع المصري القديم.
- Pharaoh was the person in charge.
كان الفرعون هو الشخص المسؤول.
- Soldiers were busy keeping Egypt safe.
كان الجنود مشغولين بالحفاظ على مصر آمنة.
- Farmers produced the food that was eaten by the people.
انتج المزارعون الطعام الذي كان يأكله الناس.
- Traders were the people who bought and sold everything.
التجار هم الأشخاص الذين اشترؤا وباعوا كل شيء.



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

يقوم التلميذ بأداء تدريب تلقائي على الكلمات السابقة بعد قراءتها

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

- _____ grow fruit and vegetables.
a. Nobles b. Scribes c. Farmers d. Doctors
- Our brave _____ help us keep Egypt safe.
a. scribes b. engineers c. soldiers d. traders
- My sister has a lot of beautiful _____ like earrings and necklaces.
a. clothes b. food c. jewelry d. places
- We have new _____ in our house, we bought new beds and tables.
a. furniture b. plants c. stars d. clouds

Notes for parents

• Ask your child to choose the correct answer.

اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة.

Ancient Egyptian society

Lots of different people played important roles in Ancient Egyptian society. The person in charge was the pharaoh. The pharaoh needed lots of people to help him. He worked closely with nobles⁽¹⁾, and they looked after different things. The nobles collected taxes⁽²⁾ and organized soldiers.



Check Vocabulary

- ضرائب
- بحمي - يدافع عن
- جيش
- رسائل
- سجلات

Soldiers were busy keeping Egypt safe. As Egypt was such an important and very rich country, the soldiers guarded the kingdom. The army was strong, and the soldiers were good at their jobs.



Scribes were very important because they were usually the only people who could read and write. They trained for about 12 years before they wrote on papyrus. They wrote many different things like letters, records, and important papers.

Without the scribes, we would know almost nothing about Ancient Egypt today.

كان الكتبة مهمين للغاية لأنهم عادة ما كانوا الوحيدين الذين يستطيعون القراءة والكتابة. تدربوا حوالي ١٢ عامًا قبل أن يكتبوا على ورق البردي. لقد كتبوا أشياء كثيرة مختلفة مثل الرسائل والسجلات والوثائق المهمة. بدون الكتبة، لم نكن لنعرف أي شيئًا تقريبًا عن مصر القديمة اليوم.

Traders were the people who bought and sold everything in Ancient Egyptian society – food, clothes, jewelry, soldiers' uniforms, ships, and materials for building.

التجار هم الأشخاص الذين اشترى وبيعوا كل شيء في المجتمع المصري القديم من طعام، ملابس، مجوهرات، زي الجنود، سفن، ومواد بناء.

Artisans took the materials from the traders and made them into things for people to use, like furniture, chariots, and clothes.

أخذ الحرفيون المواد من التجار وجعلوها أشياء ليستخدامها الناس، مثل

Farmers produced the food that was eaten by the pharaoh, the nobles, the soldiers, the scribes, the traders, and the artisans.

انتج المزارعون الطعام الذي يتناوله الفرعون والنبلاء والجنود والكتبة والتجار والحرفيون.



Demonstrate understanding of details.

وضح فهمك للتفاصيل.

LEARN

1. The needed lots of people to help him run the country.
a. scribe b. soldier c. trader d. pharaoh

PRACTICE

2. The army was
a. strong b. weak c. unhappy d. tidy

General Exercises

on Lesson 3
(Parts 1&2)

موضوع
الاسماع
في نهاية الكتاب

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Rain falls from the sun in the sky.
2. Some rainwater goes straight into the ground.
3. A lot of rainwater goes into streams.
4. The sun warms some rainwater and it becomes water vapor.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

2 Listen and complete.

1. Ramy would like to be a
2. A trader can buy and things.
3. Ahmed would like to be a
4. A soldier keeps his country

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

- | | | |
|--------------------|---|---------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Egypt is | • | <input type="checkbox"/> a. guarded the kingdom. |
| 2. The water vapor | • | <input type="checkbox"/> b. water come from ? |
| 3. The soldiers | • | <input type="checkbox"/> c. water in the ground. |
| 4. Scribes could | • | <input type="checkbox"/> d. an important country. |
| 5. Where does our | • | <input type="checkbox"/> e. rises in the air. |
| | | <input type="checkbox"/> f. read and write. |

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. buy – goods – **Traders** – and – sell – the.

2. smell – vapor – **We** – the – can't – water.

3. What job – you – would – to do – like ?

Are good – **farmers** – at – are – their jobs – doing.

5 Punctuate the following.

1. farmers grow the food for everyone

2. how are the clouds formed

6 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

Water cycle

Guiding questions :

- How are clouds formed ?
- Where does our water come from ?

Language Focus

The suffix "- er"

• اللاحقة (-er)

- When we add suffix (-er) to the end of the words to make a noun, this is called a "suffix".

• عندما نضيف (-er) لنهاية الكلمة لجعلها اسم، هذه الإضافة تسمى "لاحقة".

verb الكلمة	noun "person" اسم شخص	word الكلمة	noun "person" اسم شخص
read يقرأ	reader قارئ	football	footballer
climb يتسلق	climber متسلق	رياضة كرة القدم	لاعب كرة قدم
travel يسافر	traveler مسافر	مزرعة farm	farmer مزارع

(-ing) or (-ed) Adjectives :

• صفات تنتهي بـ (-ing) أو (-ed) :

- We can add (-ed) or (-ing) to a verb to make an adjective.

• يمكننا أضافه (-ed) أو (-ing) للفعل لتحويله إلى صفة.

(I) An adjective that ends in - (ing) describes (what a thing is like).

(١) الصفة التي تنتهي بـ (-ing) تصف كيف يبدو الشيء.

ex. - The film was **boring**. كان الفيلم مملاً.

- History is so **interesting**. التاريخ شيق جداً.

• تستخدم أيضاً الصفة المنتهية بـ (-ing) لوصف الأشخاص.

ex. - Wael is **amazing**. We are proud of him.

• وائل شخص رائع. كلنا فخورين به.

(II) An adjective that ends in (- ed) describe (how a person feels about something).

(٢) الصفة التي تنتهي بـ (-ed) تصف (ما يشعر به الشخص تجاه شيء ما).

ex. - Villagers are **excited** to hear about the plan.

- Young people will be **interested** in the new businesses.

Note for parents

If the verb ends in (-e) we take off the (-e) and add (-ed) or (-ing)
 • إذا انتهى الفعل بـ (-e) تحذف ويضاف له (-ed) أو (-ing)

Verbs

• annoy يزعج
 • amaze يذهل - يدهش
 • interest يثير اهتمام
 • tire يتعب - يرهق
 • surprise يفاجئ

Adjectives

• annoyed مزعج
 • amazed مذهش
 • interested شيق
 • tired مُجهد
 • surprised مفاجئ
 • annoying مُزعج
 • amazing مذهش
 • interesting شيق
 • tiring شاق / متعب
 • surprising مفاجئ



Pop Quiz on Language Focus

يقوم التلميذ بأداء تدريب تلقائي للإتقان القواعد اللغوية

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

- He is our He teaches us English.
 a. teacher b. teaching c. teach d. teaches
- This story is very I won't read it again.
 a. boring b. interesting c. bored d. interested
- My sister is in unusual homes.
 a. interested b. interest c. interesting d. interests
- He was , so he went to bed.
 a. tire b. tired c. tires d. tiring
- Some people think studying insects is
 a. interested b. amazed c. interesting d. amaze

Notes for parents

- Help your child learn about the adjective ending with (-ed) or (-ing). - ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن الصفات التي تنتهي بـ (-ed) أو (-ing).
- Ask your child to choose the correct answer. - اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة.



Phonics

★ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

/v/ "voiced sound"

vase قارورة		violin البيانو		vest سترة	
volcano براكين		vet طبيب بيطري		village قرية	

To pronounce /v/, press your top teeth against your bottom lip. لنطق صوت /v/، اضغط بأسنانك العلوية على شفتك السفلية.

/w/ "voiced sound"

whale حوت		winter فصل الشتاء		wet مبلل / أرض مبللة	
wheel عجلة		west غرب		watermelon ثمرة بطيخ	
water مياه		Wednesday يوم الأربعاء			

To pronounce /w/, make a tight circle with your lips.

لنطق صوت /w/، اصنع دائرة ضيقة بشفتيك.

Learn

/v/ and /w/ are both voiced sounds. This means that if you place your hand on your throat, you can feel the vibration when you say them.

- صوتي /v/ و /w/ كلاهما أصوات منطوقة وهذا يعني أنك إذا وضعت يدك على حلقك، يمكنك أن تشعر بالاهتزاز عندما تنطقهم.

- Help your child listen and repeat the words that have /v/ and /w/ sounds.

- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويردد الكلمات التي تحتوي على الأصوات /v/ و /w/.

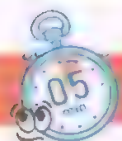
Audioscript

★ Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

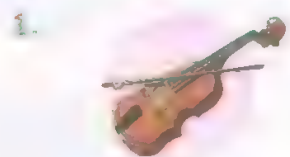
Last Wednesday I decided to travel west in my boat wearing my vest. I was looking for a volcano but I had some problems. I met some whales and they turned over my boat. I had to sit on my violin to stay afloat! I ate watermelon to stay healthy and I came to shore. I didn't find the volcano, but I met some vets and they took me home to my village!

يوم الأربعاء الماضي، قررت السفر إلى الغرب بقاربى مرتدياً سترتى. كنت أبحث عن بركان ولكن واجهت بعض المشكلات. قابلت بعض الحيتان وقاموا بقلب قاربى. وكنت مضطراً أن اجلس على آلة الكمان الخاصة بى حتى ابقى عائماً! أكلت ثمرة البطيخ حتى أبقى بصحة جيدة ووصلت إلى الشاطئ. لم أجد البركان ولكنى تقابلت مع بعض الأطباء البيطريين وأخذونى إلى بيتى فى قريتى.



Pop Quiz on Phonics

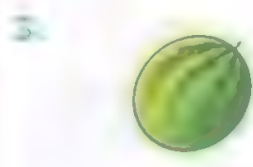
★ Listen, look and write the missing sound.



- iolin



- est



- atermelon



- hales



- heel



- et

Notes for parents

• Help your child to listen and read the text.

• Ask your child to listen, look and write the missing sound.

- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ النص.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع، ينظر إلى الصور ويكتب الصوت الناقص.

Lessons 5&6

Writing Project



Vocabulary

★ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Key vocabulary

dugong	حيوان الأطوم / بقرة البحر	sea cow	حيوان بقرة البحر
sea bed	قاع البحر	grasslands habitat	بيئة عشبية
unusual	غير عادى / استثنائى	chart	رسم توضيحي
nickname	لقب		

Extra vocabulary

email	رسالة بريد إلكترونى	favorite	مفضل
polar	قطبي	lovely	محبوب / جميل
cute	جذاب / لطيف	grass	عشب
headings	عناوين رئيسية	infographic	رسم بياني توضيحي عن معلومات
team	فريق		

Conjugation of verbs

Regular

Present	Past
talk يتحدث	talked
hope يأمل	hoped

Irregular

Present	Past
see يرى	saw
spend يقضى	spent
let يترك	let

Important expressions and prepositions

• hear about	يسمع عن	• See you soon!	أراك قريباً!
• All the best,	كل خير	• Just a quick note	مجرد ملاحظة سريعة
• from around the world	من جميع أنحاء العالم	• write back	يكتب رد على الرسالة
• expand on it	يتوسع فيه	• thanks for	شكراً على

• Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددهم.

★ Look, listen and read. انظر، استمع وأقرأ.

From : Amir
To : Tamer
Subject : Unusual animals

Dear Tamer,
Thanks for your email⁽¹⁾. How are things? It was really interesting to hear about the sports you like. I love basketball, and I play on a team⁽²⁾ once a week. This week we're talking a lot about unusual animals at school. We looked at animals from around the world and some from Egypt. My favorite unusual animal from Egypt is the dugong – can you see the photo? I think it's got a lovely friendly face and it's very cute! Its nickname⁽³⁾ is the sea cow and it spends many hours eating grass from the sea bed⁽⁴⁾ every day. What about you? What's your favorite unusual animal? Write back and let me know.
Hope to hear from you soon!
Amir

Check Vocabulary

رساله بريد إلكتروني
فريق
لعب
قاع البحر



عزيزي تامر :

شكراً على إرسالك رسالة البريد الإلكتروني. كيف حالك؟ كان من الممتع حقاً أن أسمع عن الرياضات التي تحبها. أنا أحب كرة السلة وألعب في فريق مرة واحدة في الأسبوع. نتحدث هذا الأسبوع كثيراً عن الحيوانات غير العادية في المدرسة. بحثنا عن حيوانات من جميع أنحاء العالم وبعضها من مصر. الحيوان الغير تقليدي المفضل لدى من مصر هو الأطوم - هل يمكنك رؤية الصورة؟ أعتقد أنه يتمتع بوجه ودود جميل وهو لطيف للغاية! لقبه هو بقرة البحر ويقضي ساعات طويلة في أكل العشب من قاع البحر كل يوم. وماذا عنك؟ ما هو حيوانك المفضل غير التقليدي؟ اكتب لي مرة أخرى واخبرني. أتمنى أن أسمع منك قريباً!
أمير

Notes for parents

• Help your child look at the picture, listen and read the email. • ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصورة، يستمع ويقرأ رسالة البريد الإلكتروني.

Writing skill

Writing an email كتابة بريد إلكتروني

Tips to write an email خطوات كتابة بريد إلكتروني

1. Begin your email with **Dear** or **Hi** and the person's name.
ابدأ بريدك الإلكتروني بـ عزيزي أو مرحباً واسم الشخص.
2. Say why you are writing. Use phrases like **Just a quick note** and **Thanks for writing to me**.
قل سبب كتابتك. استخدم عبارات مثل "مجرد ملاحظة سريعة" و"شكراً لك على مراسلتي".
3. Give one idea in a paragraph and expand on it - look how Amir mentions the dugong, then describes it.
أعط فكرة واحدة في فقرة اعرضها بتوسع - انظر كيف يذكر أمير حيوان الأطوم ثم يصفه.
4. When writing to a friend, you can use informal language, e.g. words like **awesome** and **cool**, contractions like **I'm**, and phrases like **How's life?** and **How are things?**
عند الكتابة إلى صديق يمكنك استخدام لغة غير رسمية. على سبيل المثال كلمات مثل عظيم، رائع، واختصارات مثل أنا وعبارات مثل كيف هي الحياة؟ وكيف تسير الأمور؟
5. End your email with phrases like **Write soon**, **Hope to hear from you soon**, **See you soon**, **All the best**, or **Bye for now**, and then your name.
اكتب بريدك الإلكتروني بعبارات مثل: اكتب لي قريباً، أتمنى أن أسمع منك قريباً أراك قريباً، أتمنى لك كل خير، أو إلى اللقاء الآن ثم اسمك.

• Help your child identify how to write an email.

• ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على كيفية كتابة رسالة بريد إلكتروني.

Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.

★ How to write an email.

From :	البريد الإلكتروني للمرسل
To :	البريد الإلكتروني للمرسل إليه
Subject :	موضوع الرسالة
Dear / Hi + اسم المرسل إليه Introduction : المقدمة	
<div style="border: 1px solid black; height: 80px; margin: 10px 0;"></div> main part الجزء الرئيسي	
See you soon : conclusion الخاتمة	
signature التوقيع	



Pop Quiz on writing

تدريب تلقائي لإتقان مهارة الكتابة (البريد الإلكتروني)

★ Write an email of (30 – 40) words to your friend about your favorite animal. Your email address is tarek@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is mohsen@gmail.com.

From :	
To :	
Subject :	
<div style="border: 1px solid black; height: 150px; margin: 10px 0;"></div>	

General Exercises

on Lessons 5 & 6

الموضوع
الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

- The dugong is a marine animal.
- It lives all his life in water.
- It eats grass from the sea bed.
- Its nickname is sea horse.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

2 Read and match (A) with (B).

- | | | |
|--------------------------|---|------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Dolphins are | • | <input type="checkbox"/> a. about wildlife. |
| 2. The dugong is my | • | <input type="checkbox"/> b. dugong's nickname. |
| 3. Ahmed sends a | • | <input type="checkbox"/> c. football. |
| 4. Sea cow is the | • | <input type="checkbox"/> d. favorite unusual animal. |
| 5. I love basketball and | • | <input type="checkbox"/> e. photo to Hazem. |
| | | <input type="checkbox"/> f. friendly sea animals. |

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

- team – basketball – I – on – play – a.
.....
- a lovely – The dugong – got – face – has – friendly.
.....
- email – for – Thanks – your.
.....
- from – soon – hear – to – Hope – you.
.....

4 Punctuate the following.

- what's your favorite bird
.....
- what does the sea cow eat
.....

TEST YOUR SKILLS

My favorite animal



If you got ● you need to revise the unit again on the next page.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على ● غير جيد قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في الصفحة التالية.

My Dictation

قياس مدى إتقان المفردات اللغوية

1 Read and write the meaning.

اقرأ واكتب المعنى.

A. chess

exhausted

rainwater

water cycle

wheel

B.

طائر البطريق

مشهور

مسافرين

جدول (نهر صغير)

جبل

My Reading

2 Read and tick (✓) the correct answer.

اقرأ وضع علامة (✓) للإجابة الصحيحة.

1. A flies at night and sleeps upside down on trees.

☐ bat

☐ kangaroo

2. A breeze is a little

☐ wind

☐ water

My Writing

3 Write an e-mail of FORTY (40)

words about "Ancient Egyptian society". Your e-mail address is

sara@yahoo.com. Your friend's

email address is ola@gmail.com.

From :

To :

Subject :

Review on unit 9



trader



scribes



branch of a tree



nuts



vase



violin



vet



exhausted



trunk of a tree



kangaroo



panda



bat



penguin



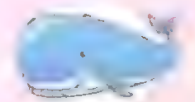
dolphin



snail



winter



whale



watermelon



can / can't

- I can play basketball.
- I can't speak Italian.
- Can you play tennis ?

could / couldn't

- I couldn't speak French when I was three.
- I could take the bus so I arrived early.
- Could you ride a bike when you were three ?

- Farmers grow the food for everyone.

- Scribes wrote everything for the people.

- Traders bought and sold all the goods in Ancient Egypt.

- The pharaoh was the ruler in Ancient Egypt.



• Help your child review unit 9.

• ساعد طفلك في مراجعة الوحدة التاسعة.

قم بملء الدائرة باللون المناسب لمستواك.

TEST YOUR SKILLS

My favorite animal



If you got ● you need to revise the unit again on the next page.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على ● غير جيد قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في الصفحة التالية.

My Dictation

قياس مدى إتقان المفردات اللغوية

1 Read and write the meaning.

اقرأ واكتب المعنى.

- A chess
exhausted
rainwater
water cycle
wheel

- B طائر البطريق
مشهور
مسافرين
جدول (نهر صغير)
جبل

My Reading

2 Read and tick (✓) the correct answer.

اقرأ وضع علامة (✓) للإجابة الصحيحة.

1. A flies at night and sleeps upside down on trees.
☐ bat
☐ kangaroo
2. A breeze is a little
☐ wind
☐ water

My Writing

- 3 Write an e-mail of FORTY (40) words about "Ancient Egyptian society". Your e-mail address is sara@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is ola@gmail.com.

From :
To :
Subject :

قم بتلوين الحائرة باللون المناسب لمستواك.

Review UNIT 9



- can / can't**
- I can play basketball.
 - I can't speak Italian.
 - Can you play tennis ?

- could / couldn't**
- I couldn't speak French when I was three.
 - I could take the bus so I arrived early.
 - Could you ride a bike when you were three ?

- Farmers grow the food for everyone.
- Scribes wrote everything for the people.
- Traders bought and sold all the goods in Ancient Egypt.
- The pharaoh was the ruler in Ancient Egypt.



• Help your child review unit 9.

• ساعد طفلك في مراجعة الوحدة التاسعة.



هذا الجزء يمكنك من ربط الكلمات التي درستها بجمل
ليساعدك على التمكن من مهارة القراءة والكتابة

1. Reading & writing skills :

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Animals	snail - shell	A snail lives in the gardens. It has a shell.
	kangaroo - jumps	A kangaroo jumps on two legs.
	ice - snow	A penguin lives on ice and snow. It's black and white.
	colorful	A parrot is very colorful. It lives in the rainforest.
	lion - strong	A lion is very strong.
Water cycle	rain - clouds	Rain falls from clouds in the sky.
	rainwater - ground	Some rainwater goes straight into the ground.
	warm - vapor	The sun warms the rainwater and it becomes water vapor.
	see - smell	We cannot see or smell the water vapor.
	water - heavier	When the water in the clouds gets heavier, it falls to the ground.
Egyptian history	soldiers - safe	Soldiers were busy keeping Egypt safe.
	guarded	The soldiers guarded the kingdom in ancient Egypt.
	army - strong	The army was strong.
	scribes - read	Scribes were the only people who could read and write.
	traders - bought	Traders were the people who bought and sold everything.
My favorite unusual animal	unusual - animal	My favorite unusual animal from Egypt is the dugong.
	lovely - face	The dugong has got a lovely friendly face.
	cute	The dugong is very cute.
	nickname - sea cow	The dugong's nickname is the sea cow.
	spend - sea bed	The dugong spends many hours eating grass from the sea bed every day.

Sentence Building

ندرب علي كيفية تكوين جملة



2. How to make a sentence :

تعلم كيف تكون جملة

1. had - day - out - yesterday - I - a wonderful. **الجملة الخبرية**
2. run - couldn't - a baby - was - he - when - My cousin.

	فاعل	فعل	باقي الجملة
1			
2			

1. healthy - to - Eat - food - strong - stay. **الجملة الأمرية**
2. tree - that - under - Don't - stop.

	Don't	مصدر الفعل	باقي الجملة
1			
2	Don't		

الجملة الاستفهامية

(أ) السؤال بـ (كلمة استفهام .. ؟)

1. you - What - did - birds - see ?
2. angry - the - was - Why - teacher ?

	كلمة الاستفهام	فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسي	باقي السؤال
1					
2					

(ب) السؤال بـ (هل .. ؟)

1. you - Could - speak - French ?
2. your - brother - Is - bored ?

	فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسي	باقي السؤال
1				
2				

3. Writing skills :

أعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وافكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الدمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة (٢٤) جملة

1 Your favorite animal

I like wildlife animals⁽¹⁾. My favorite animal is the penguin⁽²⁾. It lives on ice and snow⁽³⁾. It's black and white⁽⁴⁾. It can swim⁽⁵⁾. It can't fly⁽⁶⁾.

2 A wildlife park

I went to the new wildlife park⁽⁷⁾. It was awesome⁽⁸⁾. The kangaroos were interesting⁽⁹⁾. The penguins were in a special place inside⁽¹⁰⁾. The parrots were so beautiful and they could talk⁽¹¹⁾. We could see the lions through the trees⁽¹²⁾.

3 Water Vapor

We cannot see or smell the water vapor⁽¹³⁾. It doesn't stay on the ground⁽¹⁴⁾. It rises in the air and gets cooler high up in the sky⁽¹⁵⁾. It changes back into water and forms clouds⁽¹⁶⁾. As the clouds become bigger, the water in them gets heavier⁽¹⁷⁾. When the water in the clouds gets heavier, it falls to the ground and the cycle starts again⁽¹⁸⁾.

4 Ancient Egyptian society

The person in charge was the pharaoh⁽¹⁹⁾. Soldiers were busy keeping Egypt safe⁽²⁰⁾. Scribes were very important because they were usually the only people who could read and write⁽²¹⁾. Traders were the people who bought and sold everything in Ancient Egyptian society⁽²²⁾. Artisans took the materials from the traders, and made them into things for people to use⁽²³⁾. Farmers produced the food that was eaten⁽²⁴⁾.

Test on Unit 9

نصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

- We can smell the water vapor.
- Water vapor stays on the ground.
- Water vapor forms clouds.
- When the water in the clouds gets heavier, it falls to the ground.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

2 Listen and complete.

- Artisans took the from the traders.
- made the materials into things for people to use.
- produced the food that was eaten by the pharaoh.
- were the people who bought and sold everything.

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

- | | |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| 1. They went to | <input type="checkbox"/> a. did you see ? |
| 2. The penguin is | <input type="checkbox"/> b. project at school. |
| 3. What birds | <input type="checkbox"/> c. when you were four ? |
| 4. I'm doing a | <input type="checkbox"/> d. can fly. |
| 5. Could you play football | <input type="checkbox"/> e. a black and white bird. |
| | <input type="checkbox"/> f. a wildlife park. |

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Lots of different people played important roles in the Ancient Egyptian society. Soldiers were busy keeping Egypt safe. As Egypt was such an important and very rich country. The soldiers guarded the kingdom. The army was strong and the soldiers were good at their jobs.

Scribes were very important because they were usually the only people who could read and write. They wrote many different things like letters, records, and important papers.

Without the scribes, we would know almost nothing about Ancient Egypt today.

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The text is mainly about in ancient Egypt.
a. writing b. jobs c. food d. materials
- The underlined word "guarded" can be replaced by
a. bought b. took c. trained d. protected

5. Answer the following questions.

- Why were the soldiers very important ?
.....
- Summarize the second paragraph in one sentence.
.....

6. Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

- friendly – very – has – a – She – face.
.....
- science – interested – – in – very – am.
.....
- society – was – Egyptian – amazing – Ancient – The
.....
- is – unusual – What – your – animal – favorite ?
.....

7. Punctuate the following.

- the kangaroos live in Australia
- what did you see at the wilalife park

8. Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

What job would you like in Ancient Egypt ?

Guiding questions :

- What did they do in this job ?
- Why do you like this job ?

مجاب عنه
في نهاية
الكتاب

Review on Unit 7

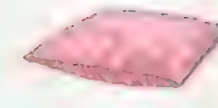
Vocabulary



armchair



balcony



cushion



oven



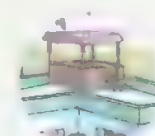
television



gate



rug



roof



reed mat

Pronunciation

double "e"



tree



sheep



cheese

double "o"



spoon



school



tool

Language

prefix un-

- He looks unhappy.
- The armchair is very uncomfortable.

Past simple Tense

- I visited her house when I was five.
- He loved living in his grandmother's apartment as a child.

Review on Unit 8

Vocabulary



earache



sore throat



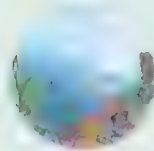
toothache



ankle



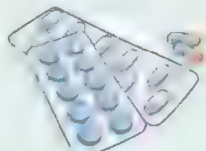
glacier



ocean



sunscreen



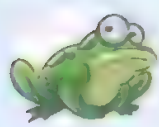
pills



bandage

Pronunciation

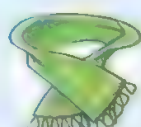
/f/ sound



frog

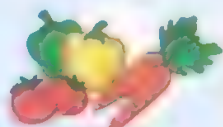


foot



scarf

/v/ sound



vegetables



van



television

Language

have with possessions

I have a headache.
She has a stomachache.
Do you have an earache?

prefix

Tarek is an irresponsible person.
The bridge is unsafe.

Review on Unit 9

Vocabulary



kangaroo



panda



bat



snail



lion



dolphin



penguin



nut



exhausted



soldier



farmer



pharaoh

Pronunciation

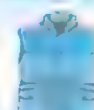
/v/ "voiced sound"



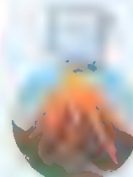
vase



violin

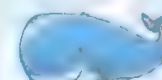


vest



volcano

/w/ "voiced sound"



whale



wheel



wet



winter

Language

can / can't

- I can speak English.
- I can't pick up that box.
- Can you climb a tree?
- Yes, I can. - No, I can't.

could / couldn't

- I could fly a kite.
- I couldn't take the bus so I had to walk.
- Could you ride a bike when you were three?
- Yes, I could. - No, I couldn't.

NON-FICTION READER

Are there endangered animals in Egypt ?



Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

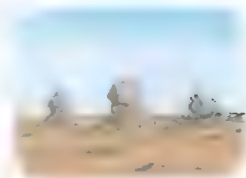
★ Look and listen. انظر واستمع.



tortoise سلحفاة صغيرة



gazelle غزالة



desert صحراء

Extra vocabulary

endangered	مهدد بالانقراض	extinct	منقرض	population	تعداد السكان
habitat	موطن	several	عدة	wild	بري
reason	سبب	poaching	الصيد الجائر	speed	سرعة
pet	حيوان أليف	herbivores	أكلة الأعشاب (نباتي)	species	أنواع

Conjugation of verbs

Regular

Present

destroy يدمر
live يعيش

Past

destroyed
lived

Irregular

Present

mean يعنى
hunt يصطاد
keep يحافظ

Past

meant
hunt
kept

★ Study these definitions. ادرس هذه التعريفات.

Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
extinct (adj)	if something is extinct, it no longer exists إذا انقرض شيء، لم يعد موجودًا
habitat (n)	the place an animal or plant lives مكان حيث يعيش الحيوان أو النبات

Notes for parents

• Help your child look at the pictures and listen to the words.

• ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور ويستمع إلى الكلمات.

★ Look, listen and read. انظر، استمع واقرأ.

If an animal is endangered, it means that it could become extinct. Animals can become endangered for several reasons including loss of habitat, pollution, and poaching.

It's our responsibility to protect all wild animals because we share the Earth with them ! Our actions shouldn't hurt wild animals or their habitats.

In Egypt, around 70 species of animals are endangered. Let's look at two of them :

إذا تعرض حيوان ما للخطر، فهذا يعنى أنه يمكن أن ينقرض. يمكن أن تصبح الحيوانات مهددة بالانقراض لعدة أسباب بما فى ذلك فقدان الموطن، التلوث والصيد الجائر. إنها مسؤوليتنا أن نحمل كل الحيوانات البرية لإننا نتشارك الأرض معهم! لا ينبغي أن نؤذى بأفعالنا الحيوانات البرية أو مواطنها. فى مصر، هناك حوالى ٧٠ نوعًا من الحيوانات مهددة بالانقراض. لنلق نظرة على اثنين منهم :

Egyptian tortoise

Facts

Population : 7,470

Can live up to : 50 years

Length : 14.4 cm

Weight : 160 - 350 g

Top speed : up to 8 kms per hour

Diet : plants and leaves



السلحفاة المصرية :

التعداد : ٧,٤٧٠

تستطيع العيش حتى عمر : ٥٠ سنة

الطول : ١٤,٤ سم

الوزن : ١٦٠ - ٣٥٠ جرام

السرعة القصوى : تصل إلى ٨ كم فى الساعة

النظام الغذائي : النباتات والأوراق

• Help your child look at the picture, listen to and read the text.

• ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصورة، يستمع ويقرأ النص.

Dorcas gazelle

Facts

Population : 1,000 – 2,000

Can live up to : 15 years

Length : 90 – 100 cm

Weight : 15 - 20 kg

Top speed : up to 96 kms per hour

Diet : plants and leaves



غزال دوركاس :

التعداد : ١٠٠٠ - ٢٠٠٠

تستطيع العيش حتى عمر : ١٥ سنة

الطول : ٩٠ - ١٠٠ سم

الوزن : ١٥ - ٢٠ كجم

السرعة القصوى : تصل إلى ٩٦ كم في الساعة

النظام الغذائي : النباتات والأوراق

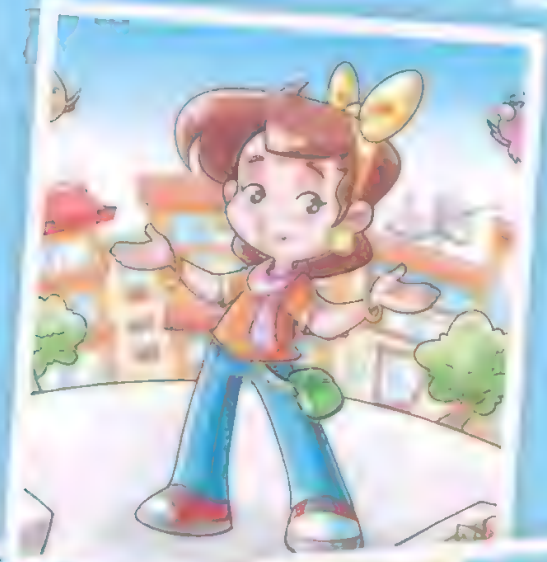
The Egyptian tortoise is one of the smallest tortoises in the world. It lives in the desert areas of Egypt and Libya. However, the Egyptian tortoise is now endangered. This is because its habitat has been destroyed, but also because people take them from the wild to keep as pets.

Dorcas gazelles live in the Sahara and Negev deserts. They are herbivores – this means they only eat leaves and plants. Dorcas gazelles are nearly extinct for two main reasons : firstly, people hunt them for their meat and skin. Secondly, more and more people are using their habitat for farming and building.

تعتبر السلحفاة المصرية واحدة من أصغر السلاحف في العالم. تعيش في المناطق الصحراوية في مصر وليبيا. ومع ذلك، فإن السلحفاة المصرية مهددة الآن. هذا بسبب تدمير موطنها، ولكن أيضًا لأن الناس يأخذونها من البرية للاحتفاظ بها كحيوانات أليفة. تعيش غزال دوركاس في الصحراء الكبرى وصحاري النقب. هم من الحيوانات العاشبة - وهذا يعني أنهم يأكلون الأوراق والنباتات فقط. قاربت غزال دوركاس على الانقراض لسببين رئيسيين : أولاً، يصطادهم الناس من أجل لحومهم وجلدهم. ثانياً يستخدم المزيد والمزيد من الناس موطنهم للزراعة والبناء.

Theme 4

Being responsible



UNIT 10

Let's visit Egypt

هيا نلّو مصر



Test your skills. في نهاية الوحدة.
Reading and Writing Skill. في نهاية الوحدة.
Dictation. في نهاية الوحدة.
التعليمات الشهيرة في كراسة المعاصر الناعمة.
تدريبات للأزهر الشريف في نهاية الكتاب.

Aims of unit ten : In this unit I will

- listen, read, research, and write about places in a town.
- practice using the imperative to tell someone to do or not to do something and to give directions.
- practice using questions and short answers.

- read and say words with diphthongs.
- estimate with mental math.
- write a paragraph about my town.
- make a poster about my perfect town.

Lesson

1

► We love Alexandria !



Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

★ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

mint	نعناع	originally	في الأصل
local cuisine	مأكولات محلية (شعبية)	vacation	إجازة
monument	أثر	tourist	سائح

Places أماكن

restaurant	مطعم	roof garden	حديقة على السطح
store	متجر	hotel	فندق
market	سوق	supermarket	سوبر ماركت
museum	متحف	town	مدينة صغيرة
beach	شاطئ	shopping mall	مركز تسوق
bank	بنك	station	محطة
factory	مصنع	square	ميدان
library	مكتبة		

Extra vocabulary

sweet	حلو المذاق	ingredients	مقادير
shopping	التسوق	friendly	ودود
lovely	جميل	population	تعداد السكان
mix	خليط	culture	ثقافة
modern	حديث	traditions	تقاليد
relaxing	مريح	Barcelona	برشلونة (مدينة في إسبانيا)
Germany	دولة ألمانيا	England	إنجلترا
traditional	تقليدي		

• Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

• ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددهم

• Fayoum is the oldest town in Egypt. Archaeologists think it is more than 7,000 years old.

• الفيوم هي أقدم مدينة في مصر يعتقد علماء الآثار أن عمرها أكثر من 7000 سنة

Conjugation of verbs

نصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present

visit يزور
remind يذكر
own يمتلك
serve يقدم طعام
move ينتقل
chat يردش

Past

visited
reminded
owned
served
moved
chatted

Irregular

Present

think يفكر
spend يقضي
find يجد

Past

thought
spent
found

Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

- | | | | |
|-------------------|------------------|---------------------|-----------------|
| • spend ages | يقضي وقت طويلًا | • prefer to | يفضل أن |
| • chat to | يحدث مع | • on vacation | في عطلة |
| • near the sea | بالقرب من البحر | • walk around | يتجول |
| • remind me of | يذكرني بـ | • mix of | خليط من |
| • borrow books | يستعير كتب | • take the train | يستقل القطار |
| • at the station | في المحطة | • turn into clothes | يتحول إلى ملابس |
| • show ... around | يأخذ شخص في جولة | • find out | يكشف |

Main points on listening and reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

- Jens is visiting Alexandria from Germany.
- يزور جينز مدينة الإسكندرية وهو من ألمانيا.
- Jens loves sitting in the roof garden of the hotel.
- يحب جينز الجلوس في حديقة سطح الفندق.
- Hanan owns a restaurant in Alexandria.
- تمتلك حنان مطعم في الإسكندرية.
- The restaurant serves traditional Egyptian food.
- يقدم المطعم أطعمة مصرية تقليدية.
- Kira and Lena love shopping in Alexandria.
- تحب كيرا ولينا التسوق في الإسكندرية.
- Karim is originally from Cairo.
- كريم من القاهرة في الأصل.
- Paulo likes Alexandria because it reminds him of home.
- يحب باولو الإسكندرية لأنها تذكره بوطنه.

05

Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

يقوم التلميذ بأداء تدريب تلقائي على الكلمات السابقة بعد قراءتها

★ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I like to drink tea with
a. stone b. rock c. mint d. salt
2. We had lunch at an Italian yesterday.
a. museum b. store c. market d. restaurant
3. I usually go to to read my favorite books.
a. hospital b. library c. bank d. market

★ Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

Why we love Alexandria !

Alexandria is a really exciting place to visit. There's a lot to see and do here ! It's a big city with lots of amazing restaurants, stores, markets, and museums. There's even a beach ! We asked some people who live there and tourists what they think ...



- الإسكندرية مكان مثير حقًا للزيارة. هناك الكثير لرؤيته والقيام به هنا ! إنها مدينة كبيرة بها الكثير من المطاعم والمتاجر والأسواق والمتاحف الرائعة. حتى أن هناك شاطئًا ! سألنا بعض السكان يعيشون هناك والسياح عن رأيهم.

Jens : I'm visiting Alexandria from Germany. I think it's really cool here. I think there are some good museums, but I haven't been to any yet. I love just sitting in the roof garden of my hotel, drinking sweet Egyptian mint tea and chatting to other people. It's very relaxing.

- جينس : أزور الإسكندرية من ألمانيا. أعتقد أن المكان رائع حقًا هنا. أعتقد أن هناك بعض المتاحف الجيدة، لكنني لم أزور أي منهم بعد. أحب مجرد الجلوس في حديقة سطح الفندق الذي أقيم فيه، وشرب شاي النعناع المصري الحلو والدرشة مع الآخرين. هذا مريح للغاية.

• Ask your child choose the correct answer.

• Help your child look at the picture and read the text.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة.

- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصورة ويفهم النص.

Hanan : I've lived in Alexandria all my life. I own a restaurant here so I have to say that you must visit my restaurant to try some of the local cuisine. We serve traditional Egyptian food using lovely fresh local ingredients. We have excellent supermarkets, but I prefer to buy my ingredients at the market in the old town.

- حنان : عشت في الإسكندرية طوال حياتي. أنا أملك مطعمًا هنا، لذا يجب أن أقول إنه يجب عليك زيارة مطعمي لتجربة بعض المأكولات المحلية. نحن نقدم طعام مصري تقليدي باستخدام المكونات المحلية الطازجة الجميلة. لدينا محلات سوبر ماركت ممتازة، لكنني أفضل شراء المكونات الخاصة بي من السوق في البلدة القديمة.

Kira and Lena : We're from a small town in England. The stores aren't very good there. That's what we love most about Alexandria – the shopping malls ! We spend ages walking around them. We like the people. They are so friendly !

- كيرا ولينا : نحن من بلدة صغيرة في إنجلترا. المتاجر ليست جيدة هناك. هذا أكثر ما نحبه في الإسكندرية - مراكز التسوق ! نقضى وقت طويلًا في التجول فيهم. نحن نحب الناس. هم ودودون جدًا !

Karim : I'm Egyptian, originally from Cairo. I moved to Alexandria last year and I love it here. I work in a bank. My favorite place is the beach – there isn't one in Cairo ! It can get very hot here in summer, so it's great to go there and swim.

- كريم : أنا مصري من القاهرة. انتقلت إلى الإسكندرية العام الماضي وأحب المكان. هنا. أنا أعمل في بنك. المكان المفضل لدى هو الشاطئ - لا يوجد شاطئ في القاهرة ! يمكن أن يكون الجو حارًا جدًا هنا في الصيف، لذلك من الرائع الذهاب إلى شاطئ والسباحة.

Paulo : I'm on vacation here from Barcelona. I like Alexandria because it reminds me of home – a big, modern city near the sea. I love the mix of modern and old buildings. Also, I like to find out about the culture and traditions. The library is amazing !

بالولو : أنا في إجازة هنا من برشلونة. أحب الإسكندرية لأنها تذكرني بالمنزل - مدينة كبيرة وحديثة بالقرب من البحر. أنا أحب مزيج المباني الحديثة والقديمة. كما أحب التعرف على الثقافة والتقاليد. المكتبة رائعة !

General Exercises

on Lesson 1

مراجعة
السماع
في نهاية الكراس

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

- Omar is from Cairo.
- Omar moved to Alexandria last month.
- Omar works in a hospital.
- It's great to go to the beach and swim there.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

2 Read and match (A) with (B).

- | | | |
|--------------------------|---|--------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Why do you | • | <input type="checkbox"/> a. chatting with her. |
| 2. I moved to | • | <input type="checkbox"/> b. go to the beach. |
| 3. She buys fruits | • | <input type="checkbox"/> c. traditional Egyptian food. |
| 4. I prefer to | • | <input type="checkbox"/> d. love Alexandria ? |
| 5. The restaurant serves | • | <input type="checkbox"/> e. at the market. |
| | | <input type="checkbox"/> f. Cairo last week. |

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

Alexandria is a really exciting place to visit. There's a lot to see and do here ! It's a big city with lots of amazing restaurants, stores, markets and museums. There's even a beach!

My friend is visiting Alexandria from Germany. He thinks it's really cool here. He thinks there are some good museums. He loves just sitting in the roof garden of his hotel, drinking sweet Egyptian mint tea and chatting to other people. It's very relaxing.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

- My friend likes drinking mint tea in the garden.
a. museum b. roof c. park d. market
- The underlined word "exciting" means
a. ugly b. bad c. wonderful d. boring

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence.

4. Give one reason why the writer's friend likes to visit Alexandria.

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. in Egypt – town – Fayoum – is – the – oldest.

2. from – My – Barcelona – is – friend.

3. a big – There's – in – station – my town.

4. your – is – place – favorite – What ?

5 Punctuate the following.

1. i want to borrow some books

2. Who is from alexandria

6 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

A visit to Alexandria

Guiding questions :

- When did you go to Alexandria ?
- What are the most exciting places in Alexandria ?

محباب عنه
في نهاية
الكتاب

Lesson

2

Let's find out !



Vocabulary

★ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Key vocabulary

evidence	دليل	monuments	أثار
paintings	رسومات / لوحات	hieroglyphics	أشكال رموز قديمة
tomb	مقبرة	artifacts	قطع أثرية - مصنوعات يدوية
pharaoh	فرعون	true	حقيقي - صحيح

Extra vocabulary

facts	حقائق	water carriers	حاملات المياه (اواني)
clearly	بوضوح	signs	علامات
structure	بنية / هيكل	buildings	بنايات
scene	مشهد	walls	جدران
symbols	رموز	daily life	الحياة اليومية
statue	نحات	information	معلومات
papyrus	برق العذراء	occasion	مناسبة
pictures	صور	event	حدث

Conjugation of verbs

صيغ المبالغة

Regular

Present

exist يوجد
bury يدفن
celebrate يحتفل
die يموت

Past

existed
buried
celebrated
died

Irregular

Present

show يشرح / يبين
learn يتعلم
build يبني
teach يعلم / يدرس

Past

showed
learnt
built
taught

• Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

• ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددهم.

Important expressions and prepositions

• tell ... about | • learn about | يتعلم عن | تخبر ... عن

★ Study these words. ادرس هذه الكلمات.

الكلمة Word	المعنى Meaning
monument	a building or statue مبنى أو تمثال
evidence	facts that show something is true الحقائق التي تظهر أن شيء ما صحيحًا
hieroglyphics	a kind of writing using pictures and symbols نوع من الكتابة باستخدام الصور والرموز
tomb	people were buried here when they died الناس دفنوا هنا عندما ماتوا
artifact	objects like vases and pots which were made in the past أشياء مثل الزهريات والأواني التي صنعت في الماضي
painting	a picture صورة

★ Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

How do we know so much about life in Ancient Egypt ?

There is lots of **evidence** that tells us about life in Ancient Egypt. Evidence is facts or signs that show clearly that something exists or is true. هناك الكثير من الأدلة التي تخبرنا عن الحياة في مصر القديمة. الدليل هو حقائق أو علامات تثبت بوضوح وجود شيء أو صحته.

1 We can learn about buildings from ancient monuments. These are structures that were built to celebrate important people.

يمكننا التعرف على المباني من الآثار القديمة. الآثار هي مباني تم بناؤها للاحتفال بالأشخاص المهمين.



Notes for parents

- Help your child read and study the given definitions.
- Help your child look at the pictures and read the text.

- ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويدرس التعريفات المعطاة.
- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور ويقرأ النص.

2



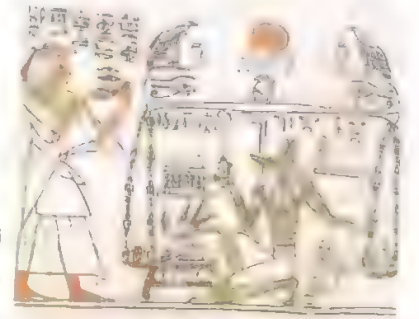
Artifacts are things from daily life like vases and water carriers that tell us how people lived.

المصنوعات اليدوية هي أشياء من الحياة اليومية مثل الزهريات وحاملات المياه التي تخبرنا كيف عاش الناس.

3

Paintings are on walls or on papyrus. They show scenes of daily life, such as farmers working in the fields, or special occasions, such as feasts and special events.

توجد الرسوم على الجدران أو على ورق البردي. تعرض الرسوم مشاهد من الحياة اليومية، مثل مزارعين يعملون في الحقول، أو المناسبات الخاصة، مثل الأعياد والأحداث الخاصة.



4



Hieroglyphics are Ancient Egyptian writing symbols and pictures. From hieroglyphics we can get evidence about life in Ancient Egypt.

الهيروغليفية هي رموز وصور الكتابة المصرية القديمة. من الهيروغليفية يمكننا الحصول على أدلة عن الحياة في مصر القديمة.

5

Pharaohs and other important people were buried in beautiful tombs. These also had other things people thought they might need and information about their life.

تم دفن الفراعنة وغيرهم من الشخصيات المهمة في مقابر جميلة كان في المقابر أشياء أخرى اعتقد الناس أنهم قد يحتاجونها ومعلومات عن حياتهم.



General Exercises

on Lesson 2

موضوع
الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Egyptians used to build their homes with brick.
2. The brick was made with cotton.
3. These homes were built in different shapes.
4. Their homes were very close to each other.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

2 Listen and complete.

1. There is lots of that tells us about life in Ancient Egypt.
2. Evidence is or signs that show something is true.
3. are things from daily life.
4. Artifacts tell us how lived.

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

A

1. Evidence is facts
2. Monuments are
3. Artifacts are
4. Paintings are
5. Hieroglyphics are

B

- a. objects like vases and pots.
- b. a kind of writing.
- c. that show something is true.
- d. were buried in tombs.
- e. buildings or statues.
- f. pictures on walls.

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. buildings – Monuments – us – teach – about.

2. tombs – buried – were – Pharaohs – in.

3. Hieroglyphics – symbols – are – pictures – and.

4. show – Paintings – life – scenes – daily – of.

5 Punctuate the following.

1. monuments were built to celebrate important people
2. how was life in Ancient Egypt

6 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

Life in Ancient Egypt

Guiding elements :

- evidence
- paintings

مجاب عنه
في نهاية
الكتاب

Don't run in the library !

Language focus



Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

★ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Alexandria Library	مكتبة الاسكندرية	outside	الخارج
quietly	بهدوء	trash can	سلة فضلات
near	قريب	environment	بيئة
Excuse me!	عذرة	button	زر
avenue	طريق	elevator	مصعد
main street = high street	شارع رئيسي		

Directions الاتجاهات

Go straight!	سير مستقيم	on the right	على اليمين
Cross the road!	أعبر الطريق	Turn right!	اتجه يميناً
across from	الدخلة المقابلة	Turn left!	اتجه يساراً
at the end of	في نهاية	go upstairs	يذهب للأعلى
on the left	على اليسار		

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Irregular

Present	Past	Present	Past
close	يغلق	closed	يقف
walk	يمشي	walked	يجري
jump	يقفز	jumped	يضع
push	يدفع	pushed	يقرأ
talk	يتحدث	talked	يكتب
		stand	stood
		run	ran
		put	put
		read	read
		write	wrote

Notes for parents

- Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

- ساعد طفلك أن يسمع إلى الكلمات ويرددهم

Important expressions and prepositions

• pick up	يلتقط	• go first	يذهب الأول
• It's amazing	هذا مذهل	• on the shelf	على الرف
• let's go in	هيا ندخل	• make sure	يتأكد
• go up	يصعد	• we are right	على حق
• keep ... clean	يحافظ على ... نظيف	• wait for	ينتظر
• get to	يصل إلى		



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

يقوم التلميذ بأداء تدريب تلقائي على الكلمات السابقة بعد قراءتها

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Keep the environment
a. ugly b. boring c. dirty d. clean
- Put the trash in the trash
a. packet b. can c. slice d. bar
- Don't up flowers.
a. pick b. plant c. help d. eat
- We should each other to clean the park.
a. kill b. help c. hit d. beat
- Maps help us to know the
a. homework b. directions c. food d. elevators

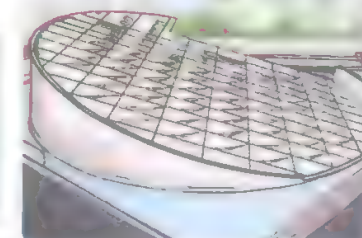


Listening and Reading

★ Listen, read and role play.



Teacher : Ok, children. We're here now. This is The Alexandria Library.
نعلم . حسناً يا أطفال. نحن هنا الآن في مكتبة الإسكندرية.



Reem : Wow! It's amazing. Can we go inside ?
ريم : واو! إنها رائعة. هل يمكننا الدخول ؟

- Ask your child to choose the correct answer.
- Help your child listen to the dialog and let him/her say what he/she listens correctly, then ask him/her to role-play it with his/her colleagues.

- ساعد طفلك أن الاستماع إلى المحادثة ودعه يقول ما يسمعه بطريقة صحيحة، ثم اطلب منه أن يتبادل الأدوار مع زملائه

Language Focus

1 Imperative صيغة الأمر

Formation التكوين

- Imperatives don't usually begin with a subject like (you / she or they). Imperatives usually start with a verb.
- عادة لا تبدأ صيغة الأمر بفاعل مثل (she , you أو they). تبدأ عادة صيغة الأمر بفعل.
- Affirmative imperatives : use the infinitive without "to".
- نستخدم فى الجملة الأمرية المثبتة مصدر الفعل بدون "to".

بافتى الجملة + مصدر الفعل (Inf.)

ex. - Run! Take, Go, Change, Sit down, Open, ... etc.

- Have fun!

- Negative imperatives use "Don't" + Infinitive without to.
- نستخدم فى الجملة الأمرية المنفية "Don't" ويأتى بعدها الفعل فى المصدر بدون "to".

مصدر الفعل (Inf.) + Don't

ex. - Don't add too much salt.

- Don't run in the classroom.

Usage الاستخدام

We use the imperative to tell someone to do or not to do something.

- نستخدم صيغة الأمر عندما نخبر شخص بفعل أو بعدم فعل شيء ما.

ex. - Chop the tomatoes.

- Don't run waste your time.

2 Asking for directions. السؤال عن الاتجاهات.

A. Excuse me, how do I get to (place) ?

• معذرة، كيف أصل إلى (مكان) ؟

B. Is there (a/an place) near here ?

• هل هناك (مكان) بالقرب من هنا ؟

C. Where is the , please ?

• أين يوجد من فضلك ؟

1. Help your child use the imperative.
2. Help your child learn how to ask for and give directions.

- ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم صيغة الأمر.
- ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كيف يسأل ويعطى اتجاهات.

Teacher : Wait a moment. Is everybody here ? Yes, Ok.
المعلم : انتظرى دقيقة. هل الجميع هنا ؟ نعم، حسناً. هيا ندخل. Let's go in.

Ali : I'm going first!

علي : أنا ذاك أولاً

Teacher : Don't run, Ali. Walk quietly. This is a very important place.
المعلم : لا تجرى يا علي. سر بهدوء. انه مكان هام جداً. Don't run.

Ali : I'm sorry.

علي : عذراً

Noha : Can we go upstairs to the Children's Library ?
نهى : هل يمكننا الصعود لمكتبة الأطفال ؟

Teacher : Yes. Go into the elevator. Good. Stand back. The doors are closing. Don't jump up and down, Ali! Push the number one button, Tarek. Great, thank you. We're going up!

المعلم : نعم. ادخلوا إلى المصعد. حسناً. قفوا فى الخلف. الأبواب تغلق. لا تقفز لأعلى وأسفل يا علي! اضغط على الزر رقم (1) يا طارق. رائع، شكراً لك. نحن نصعد

Library Rules

قواعد المكتبة

- Don't eat in the library. لا تأكل بالمكتبة.
- Bring your book back in two weeks. أعد كتابك خلال أسبوعين.
- Drink your water outside. اشرب بالخارج.
- Don't use your mobile phone. لا تستخدم تليفونك المحمول.
- Don't lose your book. لا تضيع كتابك.

General Exercises

on Lesson 3

في نهاية الكتاب
الاستماع
مصوص

Understand Apply Create

Notice :

We use the imperative to give instructions.

نستخدم صيغة الأمر لإعطاء التعليمات.

3 Giving directions إعطاء الاتجاهات

يمكنك التحدث عن الاتجاهات باستخدام الصيغ التالية :

1. Go straight on سير بشكل مستقيم
 2. Cross the road اعب الطريق
 3. Turn right / left at the end of the road and the is on your right / left.
اتجه يمينًا / يسارًا في نهاية الطريق و يكون على يمينك / يسارك
 4. Go over مَر على
- ex. Go straight on. Turn left at the end of the road and the museum is on your right.



Pop Quiz on Language

يقوم التلميذ بأداء تدريب تلقائي لإتقان القواعد اللغوية

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. vegetables into small pieces.
a. Chopping b. To chop c. Chops d. Chop
2. Go on, the school is on your left.
a. right b. straight c. between d. under
3. Don't noise in the library.
a. making b. makes c. make d. made
4. Turn and go over the hospital.
a. straight b. road c. right d. inside

Notes for parents

- Ask your child to choose the correct answer.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة.

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Adam wants to have a nice home.
2. A home is a place filled with joy, love and happiness.
3. Adam wants his home in the city.
4. The house doesn't have any windows.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

2 Read and match (A) with (B).

- | | |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. In Alexandria Library, • | <input type="checkbox"/> a. the library. |
| 2. We use the elevator • | <input type="checkbox"/> b. there're a lot of amazing books. |
| 3. Don't eat in • | <input type="checkbox"/> c. is across from you. |
| 4. Can you • | <input type="checkbox"/> d. do I get to the bank ? |
| 5. Excuse me, how • | <input type="checkbox"/> e. to go up. |
| | <input type="checkbox"/> f. help me, please ? |

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

Once upon a time, there were four gazelles in the forest. Every day they used to eat grass together. They were all friends. One day, a lion saw the gazelles eating grass together. The lion wanted to eat them so it went to catch them. When the gazelles saw the lion, all of them ran away.

A few days passed and the gazelles had a fight between themselves and started eating the grass, but not together. The lion ate the four gazelles.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. The four gazelles were in the
a. zoo b. park c. forest d. safari
2. The underlined phrase "ran away" means to
a. stop b. hold c. escape d. come

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What were the gazelles doing when the lion saw them ?

4. How many gazelles did the lion eat ?

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. left - the - on - restaurant - is - The.2. here - library - a - there - Is - near ?3. the library - in - talk - Don't - loudly.4. road - get to - the museum - Cross - the - to.

5 Punctuate the following.

1. excuse me, can you help me

2. return the book to its place

6 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

Library rules

مجاب عنه
في نهاية
الكتاب

Guiding elements :

- quiet
- mobile phone



Vocabulary

★ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Key vocabulary

strange - looking	غريب المظهر	villager	قروبي
foolish	أحمق / غبي	ibis	طائر أبو منجل
jerboa	حيوان البربوع	creature	مخلوق
lost	تائه / ضائع		

Extra vocabulary

way	طريق - طرق	crowd	مجموعة
enormous	ضخم	rude	وقح / فظ
sacks	أكياس	land	أرض
sounds	أصوات	traders	تجار
angry	غاضب	clever	ذكي
unkindly	قاسي	snake	زحمة

Conjugation of verbs

تعريف الأفعال

Regular

Irregular

Present		Past		Present		Past	
recognize	يتعرف	recognized		fly	يطير	flew	
pretend	يتظاهر	pretended		begin	يبدأ	began	
decide	يقرر	decided		understand	يفهم	understood	
offer	يعرض	offered		sell	يبيع	sold	
behave	يتصرف	behaved					
entertain	يسلى - يرفه	entertained					
apologize	يعتذر	apologized					

• Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

• ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددهم.

Look, listen and read.

انظر، استمع واقرأ.

تدرب على ١٨ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Pop Quiz

Gabi learns a lesson جابى يتعلم درس

One day, a villager wanted to sell his beans in the market, but he couldn't walk far. His camel, Gabi, said, "Give me the sacks of beans - I will take them to the market for you".

Gabi walked along the road. He turned left and then right and then left again. Soon, Gabi didn't recognize the road.



فى أحدى الأيام، أراد أحد القرويين بيع حبوب الفول فى السوق. لكنه لم يستطيع المشى بعيدًا. قال جابى الجمل الخاص به "أعطني أكياس الفول، وسأأخذها إلى السوق من أجلك. سار جابى على الطريق. استدار يسارًا ثم يمينًا ثم يسارًا مرة أخرى. وسرعان ما لم يتعرف جابى على الطريق.

"Are you lost?" called an ibis. Gabi had never seen such a strange-looking bird.

"No, I'm not lost," pretended Gabi. Gabi didn't know that the ibis could fly high above the land and tell him the way.

"هل أنت تائه؟" قال أبو منجل. لم يرى جابى مثل هذا الطائر الغريب من قبل. تظاهر جابى قال: "لا، أنا لست تائه". لم يكن جابى يعلم أن أبو منجل يمكن أن يطير عاليًا فوق الأرض ويخبره بالطريق.

Gabi saw a snake, watching him from the branches of a tree.

"You look lost," said the snake.

"No, I'm not," said Gabi-again he wasn't telling the truth.

"Anyway, even if I was, you can't help - you haven't even got legs," he said unkindly. Gabi didn't know that the snake went to the market every day to entertain the crowds.

رأى جابى ثعبانًا يراقبه من أغصان شجرة. قال الثعبان "تبدو ضائعًا". قال جابى "لا، لست كذلك". مرة أخرى لم يكن يقول جابى الحقيقة. "على أى حال، حتى لو كنت كذلك، لا يمكنك المساعدة - ليس لديك حتى أرجل،" قال بقسوة. لم يعرف جابى أن الثعبان يذهب إلى السوق كل يوم للترفيه عن الحشود.

• Help your child to look at the picture, listen and read the text.

• ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصورة، يستمع ويفهم النص

Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

- along the road على طول الطريق
- over land فوق الأرض
- reply rudely يرد بوقاحة
- funny-looking creature مخلوق مرح المظهر
- in front of أمام
- tell the truth يقول الحقيقة

Main points on listening and reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

- At the start, Gabi offered to help the villager.
- فى البداية، عرض جابى مساعدة القروى.
- The ibis could help because he could fly over the land.
- كان يمكن أن يساعد طائر أبو منجل لأنه يستطيع أن يطير فوق الأرض.
- The snake could help because he went to the market every day.
- كان يستطيع الثعبان المساعدة لأنه كان يذهب للسوق كل يوم.
- The jerboa could help because he could hear very well.
- كان يمكن أن يساعد اليربوع لأنه يسمع جيدًا.



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

يقوم التلميذ بأداء تدريب تلقائى على الكلمات السابقة بعد قراءتها

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. He is a foolish boy. He speaks
a. nicely b. politely c. rudely d. quietly
2. Be honest and the truth.
a. play b. tell c. drink d. watch
3. I saw a strange It has three eyes.
a. bike b. car c. table d. creature
4. I should because I made a mistake.
a. recognize b. apologize c. pretend d. offer

Notes for parents

• Ask your child to choose the correct answer.

• اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة



Phonics

★ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Learn

The same sound is sometimes spelled in different ways.

- نفس الصوت أحيانًا يكتب بطرق مختلفة

/g/	/b/	/b/	/m/
go يذهب	bite يعص	boy ولد	make يصنع
show يوضح	right صحيح	toy لعبة	play لعب
below أسفل	bike دراجة	coin عملة معدنية	ache ألم
grow يراعى	write يكتب	enjoy يستمتع	bake يخبز
wrote كتب	time وقت	point يشير	eight رقم ٨



Pop Quiz on Phonics

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

- I want to go to the dentist. I've a/an
a. ache b. lake c. cake d. sack
- The word "....." has the same sound as point.
a. bake b. wrote c. show d. coin
- The word "bite" has the same sound as
a. show b. take c. toy d. bike

- Help your child listen and repeat the words.
- Ask your child to choose the correct answer.

- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويكرر الكلمات.
- اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة.

It began to get dark. Gabi saw a little animal on the road in front of him. "What a funny-looking creature. Look at those enormous ears," he thought to himself.

"Hello," said the jerboa. "Do you need any help?"

"No, I don't!" replied Gabi rudely. Gabi didn't know that the jerboa could hear the sounds of the market traders.

"OK, good night then," called the jerboa.

Soon, it was completely dark and Gabi understood he needed the animals' help. He knew he was foolish and he was sorry. He decided to go to sleep, and to apologize and ask for their help the next day.

بدأ الظلام. رأى جابي حيوانًا صغيرًا على الطريق أمامه قال لنفسه: "ياله من مخلوق مضحك. انظر إلى تلك الأذنين الهائلين". قال اليربوع "مرحبًا، هل تحتاج أي مساعدة؟" "لا أنا لا أريد جابي بوقاحة. لم يعرف جابي أن اليربوع يستطيع سماع أصوات تجار السوق. "حسنًا تصبح على خير إذن" قال اليربوع. سرعان ما دلت الظلام تامة وأدرك جابي أنه كان بحاجة إلى مساعدة الحيوانات. عرف أنه كان أحمق وكان أسفًا. قرر جابي الذهاب للنوم والاعتذار وطلب مساعدتهم في اليوم التالي.

• Determine the meaning of words. وضح معنى الكلمات.

LEARN

1. The underlined word "recognize" means

kill

say

play

PRACTICE

2. The underlined word "enormous" means very

a. small

b. big

c. clean

d. sad

The moral of the story

المفرد من القصة

- Asking for help is good.

الطلب للمساعدة شيء جيد.

General Exercises

on Lesson 4 (Parts 1&2)

نصوص
الاسماع
في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and complete.

1. A wanted to sell his beans.
2. He wanted to sell his beans in the
3. He couldn't far.
4. His offered to help him.

2 Read and match (A) with (B).

A

1. The ibis could
2. A farmer can
3. You should tell
4. He turned left
5. When we get lost,

B

- a. and right.
- b. he was sorry.
- c. we should ask for help.
- d. grow crops.
- e. the truth.
- f. fly above the land.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. market - They - to - will - the - go.
2. has - The snake - legs - no.
3. any - Do - help - you - , Sarah - need ?
4. his - asked - He - friend - for help.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

One day, a villager wanted to sell his beans in the market, but he couldn't walk far. His camel, Gabi, said, "Give me the sacks of beans- I will take them to the market for you". Gabi walked along the road. He turned left and then right and then left again. Soon, Gabi didn't recognize the road. Gabi saw a strange looking bird. It's an ibis. But Gabi didn't ask for help. Gabi didn't know that the ibis could fly high above the land and tell him the way. Gabi saw a snake, but didn't ask the

snake for help. Gabi didn't know that the snake went to the market every day and could tell him the way.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. The main idea of the text is about "Gabi who".
a. got lost b. ate grass c. flew away d. felt hungry
2. The underlined word "recognize" means
a. know b. read c. run d. fly

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What did the villager want to sell ?
.....
4. How many animals did Gabi see ?
.....

5 Punctuate the following.

1. a farmer wanted to help his village
.....
2. what do you need
.....

6 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

A lesson you learned

مجاب عنه
في نهاية
الكتاب

Guiding questions :

- What situation did you have ?
- Who could help you ?

★ Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.

An estimated answer isn't the actual answer - it's a good guess. For example, if you add 12 and 17, you know the answer is "close to" 30. You know it isn't close to 60. You can say :

It's around ... / It's about إنه حوالى ... إنه حوالى

It's near ... / It's close to ... إنه قريب من ... إنه قريب إلى

الإجابة التقديرية ليست الإجابة الفعلية - إنها تخمين جيد. على سبيل المثال، إذا أضفت 12، 17، فأنت تعلم أن الإجابة قريبة من عدد 30. أنت تعلم أنها ليست قريبة إلى عدد 60 يمكنك أن تقول :

How much will ten lemons and a kilo of grapes be, please ?

كم سوف يقدر ثمن 10 ثمار ليمون و 1 كيلو عنب، من فضلك ؟

They will be around 50 Egyptian pounds.

سوف يقدر ثمنهم حوالى 50 جنية مصرى.



Pop Quiz on Math

★ Look quickly and circle the correct estimated answer.

- | | | | |
|----------------------------|-------|-----|-------|
| 1. $448 + 351 =$ | (800 | 900 | 120) |
| 2. $18 + 45 + 20 =$ | (8 | 18 | 80) |
| 3. $101 + 90 + 88 =$ | (350 | 280 | 400) |
| 4. $74 + 33 =$ | (110 | 50 | 10) |
| 5. $77 + 120 =$ | (80 | 130 | 200) |

Notes for parents

- Help your child read and learn about estimated answer. - ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعلم عن الإجابة التقديرية.
- Ask your child look quickly and circle the correct estimated answer. - اطلب من طفلك أن ينظر بسرعة ويضع دائرة حول الإجابة التقديرية الصحيحة.



Vocabulary

★ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Key vocabulary

location	موقع	history	تاريخ
tourist attractions	عوامل جذب سياحية	waterpark	ملاهى مائية
culture	ثقافة	delicious	لذيذ

Extra vocabulary

theater	مسرح	boat trip	رحلة بالقارب	perfect	مثالى
the British Museum	المتحف البريطانى	bridge	كوبرى	kinds	أنواع
the River Thames	نهر التايمز	the International Park	الحديقة الدولية	shade	ظل
shopping malls	مراكز تسوق	fascinating	مبهر / ساحر	free	مجانى
picnic	نزهة خلوية	archaeological	أثرى	wonderful	رائع
Buckingham Palace	قصر باكنجهام	treasure			كنز

Conjugation of verbs

أصريف الأفعال

Regular

Irregular

Present

Past

Present

Past

rain	تمطر	rained	يختار	chose
worry	يقلق	worried	يطعم / يغذى	fed
describe	يصف	described		
encourage	يشجع	encouraged		
miss	يفوت	missed		

Important expressions and prepositions

عبارات مهمة وحرف جر

- take a relaxing boat trip يقوم برحلة مريحة بالقارب
- plenty of كثير من (وفرة من)

- Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددهم.



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

يقوم التلاميذ بأداء تدريب تلقائي على الكلمات السابقة بعد قراءتها

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

- We had a in a large park last weekend .
a. lesson b. exam c. picnic d. exercise
- I like to buy vegetables and fruits.
a. old b. dirty c. ugly d. fresh
- There are in the museum.
a. treasures b. traffic c. bridges d. rivers

★ Look, listen and read.

انظر، استمع واقرأ.

This is one of the most exciting cities in the world. It often rains here, but it doesn't matter because there are lots of fun things to do. You can go on a big red bus and visit amazing tourist attractions. You will see famous places like Buckingham Palace, theaters, and the British Museum.



هذه واحدة من أكثر المدن إثارة في العالم. غالبًا ما تمطر هنا. لكن هذا لا يهم لأن هناك الكثير من الأشياء الممتعة التي يمكنك القيام بها. يمكنك الذهاب في حافلة حمراء كبيرة وزيارة مناطق الجذب السياحي المذهلة. ستري أماكن شهيرة مثل قصر باكنجهام والمسارح والمتحف البريطاني.

You can take a relaxing boat trip on the River Thames and go under the famous bridges. All the walking around will make you hungry! But don't worry, there are plenty of different restaurants to choose from. You can find delicious food from all over the world here!

يمكنك القيام برحلة استرخاء بالقارب على نهر التايمز والذهاب تحت الجسور الشهيرة. كل هذا سيجعلك التجول تشعر بالجوع! لكن لا تقلق، فهناك الكثير من المطاعم المختلفة للاختيار من بينها. يمكنك أن تجد هنا طعامًا لذيذًا من جميع أنحاء العالم!

Notes for parents

• Help your child look at the picture, listen and read the text.

- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصورة، يستمع ويقرأ النص.

★ Look, read and learn.

انظر، اقرأ وتعلم.

تدرب على 18 من قطع المفردات ونصوص الاستماع Pop Quiz

NEW ALAMEIN

There are many exciting things to do in New Alamein. The city is on the beach so you can visit the cool sea when it's hot. This beautiful beach is 14 kms long! There is also a large, green lake right in the middle of the city! You can also



visit the beautiful International Park. If you want to learn about the fascinating history of the area, then visit the Archaeological Center. There are some amazing treasures there. I can't wait to see you in New Alamein.

هناك الكثير من الأشياء الرائعة التي يمكنك القيام بها في مدينة العلمين الجديدة تقع مدينة العلمين على الساحل لذلك يمكنك زيارة البحر المنعش عندما يكون الجو حار هذا الساحل يبلغ طوله 14 كم. يوجد أيضًا بحيرة كبيرة نظيفة في منتصف المدينة. يمكنك أيضًا زيارة الحديقة الدولية الجميلة إذا كنت تريد أن تعرف عن تاريخ المنطقة الرائعة. فقم بزيارة المركز الأثري حيث يوجد به بعض الكنوز الرائعة أود أن أراك سريعًا في مدينة العلمين.

Determine the meaning of words. حدد معاني الكلمات.

LEARN

1. The underlined adjective "exciting" means
a. ugly b. boring c. amazing d. dirty

PRACTICE

2. The underlined adjective "large" means
a. small b. tiny c. big d. clean

• Help your child look, read and learn.

- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر، يقرأ ويتعلم.

Our perfect town

In our perfect⁽¹⁾ town⁽²⁾, there is a big zoo right next to the school. We can go there every afternoon after classes. We can help to feed the animals.

It is really hot in our town, so there is a waterpark that is always open. It's free to go in!

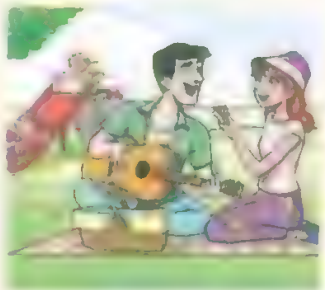
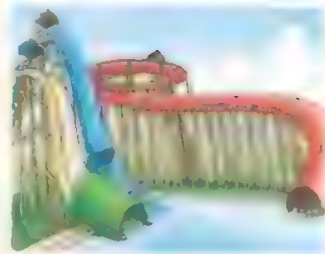
There is a wonderful market⁽³⁾ that sells all kinds of delicious food, like fresh bread and fresh⁽⁴⁾ fruit and vegetables.

There is a big park with lots of trees so we can go for family picnics in the shade⁽⁵⁾.

This is our perfect town!

Check Vocabulary

- (1) مثالي
- (2) مدينة (صغيرة)
- (3) سوق
- (4) طازج
- (5) ظل



مدینتنا المثالیة :

فی بلدنا المثالیة، توجد حديقة حیوانات كبیرة بجوار المدرسة مباشرةً. يمكننا الذهاب إلى هناك بعد ظهر كل یوم بعد انتهاء الدروس. يمكننا المساعدة فی إطعام حیوانات الحديقة حقاً فی مدینتنا. لذلك توجد حديقة مائیة مفتوحة دائماً. والدخول مجاناً.

توجد سوق رائحة یسّم جميع أنواع الأطعمة الشهیة، مثل الخبز الطازج والمأكولات الخضروات الطازجة.

تمتد حديقة كبیرة بها الكثير من الأشجار حیث يمكن من الذهاب إلى نزهة عائلیة فی الظل. هذا بلدنا المثالیة.

After Reading, note the following بعد القراءة لاحظ التالي

- When you are trying to encourage people to go to a place, think about :
عندما تحاول أن تشجع الناس أن یزوروا مكان فكر فی الآتی :
- Positive adjectives like (amazing – fascinating) to describe the place.
صفات إيجابية (رائع - مذهش ...) لوصف المكان
- famous attractions
عوامل الجذب المشهورة بالمكان
- location
الموقع
- history / culture / arts
تاریخ المكان / ثقافته / الفنون التي توجد به.

Notes for parents

- Help your child look at the pictures, listen and read the text.

ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور، يستمع ويقرأ النص.

General Exercises

on Lessons 5&6

نصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب

Understand Apply Create

1 Listen and complete.

1. My friends and I were in last week.
2. We ate Italian at a restaurant.
3. We took lots of
4. We arrived at our at night.

2 Read and match (A) with (B).

- | | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>(A)</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. In Egypt, we 2. We had a boat trip 3. This market sells 4. We had a delicious meal in 5. When I go to the beach, | <p>(B)</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. all kinds of food. b. to do. c. on the river. d. I go swimming. e. the restaurant. f. can visit the Egyptian Museum. |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

London is one of the most exciting cities in the world. It often rains here, but it doesn't matter because there are lots of fun things to do. You can go on a big red bus and visit amazing tourist attractions. You will see famous places like Buckingham Palace, theaters, and the British Museum. You can take a relaxing boat trip on the River Thames and go under the famous bridges. All the walking around will make you hungry! But don't worry, there are plenty of different restaurants to choose from. You can find delicious food from all over the world here!

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. The weather is often in London.
a. rainy b. hot c. sunny d. dry
2. The phrase "plenty of" means
a. little b. many c. few d. small

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What things can you do when you go to London ?

4. Where can you take a relaxing boat trip in London ?

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. Alamein – in – good – **The food** – New – is.

2. miss – the – Park – **Don't** – International.

3. perfect – town – a – you – **Do** – have ?

4. our town – **It** – is – really – hot – in.

5 Punctuate the following.

1. my favorite food is fresh fish

2. Are there great artifacts in New alamein

6 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

Our perfect town

Guiding words :

- Waterpark
- shopping mall

محاب عنه
في نهاية
الكتاب

TEST YOUR SKILLS

Let's visit Egypt



If you got ● you need to revise the unit again on the next page.

● غير جيد ● جيد ● جيد جداً ● ممتاز

My Dictation

قياس مدى إتقان المفردات اللغوية

1 Read and write the meaning.

اقرأ واكتب المعنى.

- A. tomb
mint
bank
cuisine
station

B.

مريح
اتجاه
سر بشكل مستقيم
استدر يمينا
مخلوق

My Reading

2 Look, read and complete.

انظر، اقرأ وأكمل.

fruit – picnic – hot – sells

There's a wonderful market that
... all kinds of food like,
fresh bread and fresh
and vegetables. There's a big park
with lots of trees, so we can go
for family

My Language

3 Rewrite the sentences using the imperative :

1. You shouldn't drink cola.

2. It's good to do your homework.

3. Please, can you open the window ?

4. You should turn left by the school.

My Writing

4 Write a paragraph from (4 - 6) sentences about.

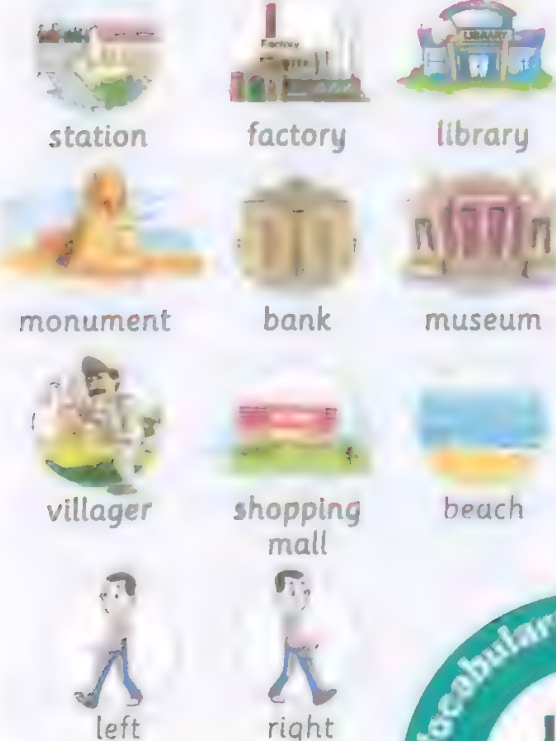
"Your perfect town"

My Project

5 Make a leaflet about your town or city.

قم بتلوين الدائرة باللون المناسب لمستواك.

Review on unit 10



go يذهب	bite عص	boy ولد	make صنع
show يوضح	write يكتب	coin عملة معدنية	play يلعب
below أسفل	time وقت	point يشاور	ache ألم
grow يزرع	bike دراجة	enjoy يستمتع	take ياخذ



Imperative

Positive form : **Inf. +**

Open the window.

Negative form : **Don't + inf.**

Don't throw trash in the street

An **estimated** answer isn't the actual answer – it's a good guess.

- When you add 12 to 17, you know the answer is close to (30).



Skills



هذا الجزء يمكنك من ربط الكلمات التي درستها بجمل
ل يساعدك على التمكن من مهارة القراءة والكتابة

1. Reading & writing skills :

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Your perfect city	exciting	This is one of the most exciting cities in the world.
	rains	It often rains here.
	fun	There are lots of fun things to do.
	tourist attractions	You can go on a bus and visit amazing tourist attractions.
	delicious	You can find delicious food from all over the world here.
Alexandria	Alexandria	I'm visiting Alexandria from Germany.
	cool	I think it's really cool here.
	museums	I think there are some good museums here.
	roof garden	I love just sitting in the roof garden of my hotel.
Life in Ancient Egypt	evidence	There is lots of evidence that tells us about Ancient Egypt.
	monuments	We can learn about building from ancient monuments.
	celebrate	Monuments were built to celebrate important people.
	artifacts	Artifacts are things from daily life.
	paintings	Paintings are on walls or on papyrus.
	Hieroglyphics	Hieroglyphics are Ancient Egyptian writing.
New Alamein	tombs	Pharaohs were buried in beautiful tombs.
	exciting	There are many exciting things to do in New Alamein.
	beach	The city is on the beach.
	International Park	You can visit the International Park there.
	treasures	In the Archaeological Center there are a lot of treasures.

Notes for parents

- Help your child review unit 10.

• ساعد طفلك في مراجعة الوحدة العاشرة.

Sentence Building

تدرب على كيفية تكوين جملة



2. How to make a sentence :

تعلم كيف تكون جملة

1. am – vacation – I – on – a.
2. live – a small – in – We – town.

الجملة الخبرية

فاعل	فعل	باقي الجملة
1		
2		

1. some – Drink – water.
2. the grass – walk – Don't – on.

الجملة للامرية

Don't	مصدر الفعل	باقي الجملة
1		
2	Don't	

الجملة الاستفهامية

(أ) السؤال بـ (كلمة استفهام .. ؟)

1. Alexandria – Who – from – is ?
2. get – do – I – How – the station – to ?

كلمة الاستفهام	فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسي	باقي السؤال
1				
2				

(ب) السؤال بـ (هل .. ؟)

1. you – Pyramids – Have – the – visited ?
2. any – Do – need – you – help ?

فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسي	باقي السؤال
1			
2			

3. Writing skills :

٣ تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة (٢٤ جملة).

1 Our perfect town

In our perfect town, there is a big zoo right next to the school⁽¹⁾. We can go there every afternoon after classes⁽²⁾. We can help to feed the animals⁽³⁾. There is a waterpark that is always open⁽⁴⁾. There is a wonderful market that sells all kinds of food⁽⁵⁾. There is a big park with lots of trees⁽⁶⁾.

2 Alexandria

Alexandria is a really exciting place to visit⁽⁷⁾. There's a lot to see and do here⁽⁸⁾! It's a big city with lots of amazing restaurants, stores, and markets⁽⁹⁾. There's even a beach⁽¹⁰⁾. It can get very hot in summer but we can go to swim⁽¹¹⁾. The people are so friendly⁽¹²⁾. There are some amazing museums in Alexandria⁽¹³⁾. You can visit them all⁽¹⁴⁾. You can try the traditional Egyptian food in many restaurants there⁽¹⁵⁾. There are a lot of shopping malls there⁽¹⁶⁾. You can spend ages walking around them⁽¹⁷⁾. Alexandria has a beautiful mix of old and modern things⁽¹⁸⁾.

3 Life in Ancient Egypt

We can learn about buildings from ancient monuments⁽¹⁹⁾. These are structures that were built to celebrate important people⁽²⁰⁾. Hieroglyphics are Ancient Egyptian writing symbols and pictures⁽²¹⁾. From hieroglyphics we can get evidence about life in Ancient Egypt⁽²²⁾. Pharaohs and other important people were buried in beautiful tombs⁽²³⁾. These also had other things people thought they might need and information about their life⁽²⁴⁾.

Test on Unit 10

صوب
الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Carl lives in Paris now.
2. Carl's dad got a new job in London.
3. Carl doesn't have any friends in London.
4. In winter, Carl went to the beach before school.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

2 Listen and complete :

1. Mr Ali is tall and
2. He works at
3. Mr Ali teaches
4. He his car to school at half past seven.

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

- A**
1. Fayoum is the
 2. Can you
 3. We can learn about ancient monuments
 4. Hieroglyphics
 5. There're a lot of treasures in

- B**
- a. the Archaeological Center.
 - b. are a kind of writing using pictures.
 - c. oldest town in Egypt.
 - d. hot in our town.
 - e. help me, please ?
 - f. in history.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

I live in a nice town in England. It isn't a big town. There are shops, banks, cafés, a post office, and two supermarkets. There's a swimming pool in the town, too! There isn't a shopping centre in my town, but there are some great shops on a road. My favorite place in the town is the town square. There aren't lots of cafés on it, but there's a big market to buy nice things there.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. The underlined word "great" means
a. nice b. bad c. boring d. hot

2. The main idea of the text is about ".....".

- a. A town in England
- b. A great shop in England
- c. A market in England
- d. A shopping centre in England

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What places are there in the writer's town ?
.....
4. Why do you think the writer liked the town square ?
.....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. beans - A villager - sell - to - wanted - his.
.....
2. a train - catch - can - You - a station - at.
.....
3. wonderful - places - town - My - has - many.
.....
4. beach - your - is - near - town - the ?
.....

6 Punctuate the following.

1. don't waste your time
.....
2. Excuse me where's the shopping mall
.....

7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

Your town

مجاوب عنه
في نهاية
الكتاب

- What are the famous attractions in your town ?
- Where can you spend nice time in your town ?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

UNIT 11

Getting out in the fresh air

الخروج في الهواء النقي



• التقييمات الشهرية في كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية.

• Dictation في نهاية الوحدة.

• Test your skills في نهاية الوحدة.

• Reading and Writing Skill في نهاية الوحدة.

• تدريبات للأزهر الشريف في نهاية الكتاب.

الكتاب
الأساسي

Aims of unit eleven :

In this unit I will

• listen, read, research, and write about nature trails.

- استمع، اقرأ، أبحث وأكتب عن دروب المشي الطبيعية.

• recognize adjectives and adverbs.

- أتعرف على الصفات والظروف.

• learn words about nature.

- أتعلم كلمات عن الطبيعة.

• listen to a conversation about hiking.

- أستمع إلى محادثة عن التزه.

الأهداف العامة للوحدة الحادية عشر :

في هذه الوحدة سوف.....

• read about hiking the Red Sea Mountain Trail.

- اقرأ عن التزه في درب جبال البحر الأحمر.

• read and say words with /n/ and /r/ sounds.

- اقرأ وأقول كلمات بأصوات /n/ و /r/.

• write text messages.

- أكتب رسائل نصية.

• design a nature trail.

- أصمم أحد الدروب الطبيعية.

Lesson

1

Getting out in nature



Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

★ Look, listen and repeat.

النظرات الستة وردد.



tree



leaf



rock



grass



hill



village قرية



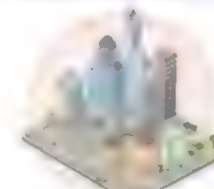
city



plant



stream



town

Extra vocabulary

building	مبنى	stone	حجر	background	خلفية
weather	طقس	high	مرتفع / عالي	trunk	جذع شجرة
nature	طبيعة	hard	صلب	branch	فرع / غصن
wooden	خشبي	Alexandria	مدينة الإسكندرية	Cairo	مدينة القاهرة
famous	مشهور	river	نهر	tomatoes	طماطم
Hurghada	مدينة الغردقة	difficult	شاق	flowers	زهور

• Help your child look, listen to the words and repeat them.

• ساعد طفلك أن ينظر، يستمع إلى الكلمات ويردد.

A fantastic hiking trail in Egypt is the Nuweiba Trail in Sinai. You can see the famous Colored Canyon there.

بعد مئتيه بوبيع في سيناء أحد أزوع متبرهات المشى في مصر يمكنك رؤية الوادي الملون الشهير هناك

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Irregular

Present climb يتسلق
Past climbed

Present feel يشعر
grow يزرع
Past felt
grew

Important expressions and prepositions

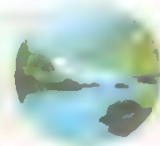
عبارات وحروف جر هامة

getting out من الصعب إلى حد ما أن ... الخرج It's quite difficult to

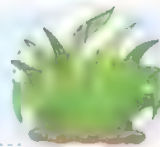
★ Look, read and identify.

انظر، اقرأ وتعرف.

1 A stream is like a river, but smaller.



2 I love the feeling of green grass. أحب ملمس العشب الأخضر.



3 A tree is a very tall plant with branches and wooden trunk. الشجرة هي نبات طويل جدًا له فروع وجذع خشبي.



4 A village is much smaller than a town or city. القرية أصغر بكثير من البلدة أو المدينة.



5 It's quite difficult to climb that hill because it's very high. من الصعب جدًا تسلق هذا التل لأنه مرتفع جدًا.



6 Some famous cities in Egypt are Cairo, Alexandria, and Hurghada. بعض أشهر المدن المصرية القاهرة، الإسكندرية والغردقة.



Notes for parents

- Help your child look at the pictures, read and identify words about nature. - ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور، يقرأ ويتعرف على كلمات عن الطبيعة.

7 A rock is hard. It is a large stone.

الصخرة صلبة. فهي عبارة عن حجر كبير.



8 I like growing tomato plants because I like eating tomatoes.



9 That plant has flowers and lots of green leaves.

هذه هي عشب أزهار والكثير من الأوراق الخضراء.



Language Focus

Plural nouns الأسماء الجمع

- To make plurals we usually add an (-s) للتحويل لصيغة الجمع فإننا غالبًا نضيف (-s) للاسم المفرد.

ex. house → houses

- If the word ends in (-y) (after a consonant), then we take off the (-y) and add (-ies) إذا كانت الكلمة تنتهي ب(-y) (بعد حرف ساكن) نحذف حرف (-y) ونضيف (-ies) للاسم المفرد.

ex. city → cities

- If the word ends in (-f), then we take off the (-f) and add (-ves) إذا كانت الكلمة تنتهي ب(-f) نحذف حرف ال(-f) ونضيف (-ves).

ex. leaf → leaves



Pop Quiz on Language

يقوم التلميذ بأداء تدريب تلقائي للتقنيات القواعد اللغوية

★ Read and change into plural.

singular اسم مفرد	apple	shelf	party	strawberry
plural اسم جمع				

- Help your child know how to make nouns plural. - ساعد طفلك أن يعرف كيف يكون أسماء الجمع.
- Ask your child to read and change the singular nouns into plural. - اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويحول الأسماء المفردة إلى الجمع.

General Exercises

on Lesson 1

صوت
الاسماع
في فم الكتاب

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

- Plants have two main parts.
- The roots grow underground.
- The leaves make food for the plants.
- The roots make seeds for the plant.

2 Listen and complete.

- My favorite hobby is
- I love books with
- The best books are about
- I read at home with my

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

- | | | |
|------------------------|--------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. A stream is smaller | <input type="checkbox"/> | a. a small village. |
| 2. Trees have | <input type="checkbox"/> | b. many people. |
| 3. Plants have lots | <input type="checkbox"/> | c. than the river. |
| 4. I live in | <input type="checkbox"/> | d. famous city. |
| 5. Alexandria is a | <input type="checkbox"/> | e. of green leaves. |
| | <input type="checkbox"/> | f. wooden trunks. |

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

- than – A village – a town – is – much – smaller.
- a tall – is – plant – branches – with.

3 I – trees – in the – see – background – can.

4 stone – is – large – a rock – a.

5 Punctuate the following.

- it's quite difficult to climb the hill
- i like growing tomato plants

6 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

Nature

مجاوب عنه
في نهاية
الكتاب

Guiding questions :

- What can you see in the nature ?
- What do you like in the nature ?



Vocabulary

★ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Key vocabulary

nature trail	درب (متنزه) طبيعي	diver	غواص
dates	تواريخ	weekend	عطلة نهاية الأسبوع

Extra vocabulary

brave	شجاع	friend	صديق
invitation	دعوة	everything	كل شيء
views	مناظر طبيعية	trailing	تتبع
alone	بمفرده	life	حياة
swimmer	سباح	boring	ممل
hike	نزهة سيراً على الأقدام	Blue Lagoon	بلو لاجون (منتجع في مدينة دهب)
Wadi Degla	وادي دجلة		

Conjugation of verbs

أصريف الافعال

Regular

Present	Past
contact يتصل	contacted
decide يقرر	decided
check يفحص - يراجع	checked
accept يقبل	accepted
remember يتذكر	remembered
guess يخمن	guessed

Irregular

Present	Past
swim يسبح	swam
know يعرف	knew
leave يترك	left

Notes for parents

- Help your child to listen to the words and repeat them.

- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددهم.

Important expressions and prepositions

• good for me	جيد لي	• go on a trail	الذهاب في نزهة
• sounds like fun	تبدو ممتعة	• How's life ?	كيف حالك / ما الحال ؟
• go for a hike	يذهب للتنزه	• like best of	يفضل من



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

يقوم التلميذ بأداء تدريب تلقائي على الكلمات السابقة بعد قراءتها

★ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- What's the today ? - It's 22nd January.
a. weekend b. date c. hike d. time
- He is a great He swims really fast.
a. footballer b. runner c. climber d. swimmer
- There're a lot of amazing in nature.
a. views b. interviews c. reviews d. interviewers
- Hatem is a boy. He isn't afraid of the dogs.
a. busy b. brave c. bored d. quick

Main points on listening and reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

- Dina wrote an email to Reem. كتبت دينا رسالة بريد إلكتروني لريم.
- Dina wants to go on a trail with Reem. دينا تريد أن تذهب للتنزه مع ريم.
- Reem is a good swimmer. ريم سباحة ماهرة.
- Reem thinks that the nature trail trip could be interesting. ريم تعتقد أن رحلة التنزه الطبيعي ستكون ممتعة.
- Dina is a brave diver. دينا غواصة شجاعة.

★ Study this definition.

ادرس هذا التعريف.

Word الكلمة

Definition التعريف

nature trail

A place you go for a hike in nature to see all the plants and animals.

مكان تذهب فيه للتنزه في الطبيعة لرؤية كل النباتات والحيوانات.

- Ask your child to choose the correct answer.

- Help your child read and identify the definition of the given word. - اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة.
- ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعرف على تعريف الكلمة المعطاة له. - ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعرف على تعريف الكلمة المعطاة له.

★ Look and read.

انظر واقرأ.

From : Dina
To : Reem
Subject : Nature trail weekend

Hi Reem,
How's life ?
Guess what ? My family and I want to go on a trail to Wadi Degla or the Blue Lagoon at Dahab. Mom said I can take a friend, and I want to take you! Can you come ? Mom said you and I can decide which we like best of the two places. Wadi Degla is cool because you can see lots of animals, but you can swim at the Blue Lagoon! I know you walk quickly and swim well, so which nature trail do you like ? Also, what dates do you prefer, 13-14 July or 20-21 July ?
Bye for now!
Dina



أهلاً ريم،
كيف الحال ؟
خمنى ماذا ؟ أريد أنا وعائلتي الذهاب في نزهة إلى وادي دجلة أو بلو لاجون في دهب. قالت أمي أنه يمكنني أن اصطحب صديق، وأنا أريد اصطحابك أنتي ! هل تستطيعين أن تأتي ؟ قالت أمي : أنك وأنا يمكننا أن نقرر أيهما أفضل من المكانين. وادي دجلة رائع لأنه يمكنك رؤية الكثير من الحيوانات به، ولكن يمكنك السباحة في البلو لاجون! أعلم أنك تمشين بسرعة وتسبحين جيداً، فما هو المتنزه الطبيعي الذي تفضليه ؟ أيضاً ما هي التواريخ التي تفضلها، ١٣-١٤ يوليو أم ٢٠-٢١ يوليو ؟

إلى اللقاء الآن!
دينا

From : Reem
To : Dina
Subject : Re : Nature trail weekend

Hi Dina,
Life's great! How are you ?
The nature trail trip sounds like fun, and I really want to come!
I think the Blue Lagoon is fine because we can swim and dive!
Yes, I can swim quickly, but you're very brave! Remember when you dived from that rock ? I just talked to my mom and the weekend 20-21 July is good for me. She's going to call your mom to check everything.
Can't wait to see you!
Reem



مرحباً دينا،
الحياة رائعة ! كيف حالك ؟
تبدو رحلة المتنزه الطبيعي ممتعة، وأريد حقاً المجيء! أعتقد أن البلو لاجون جيدة لأننا نستطيع السباحة والغوص! نعم، يمكنني السباحة بسرعة، لكنك شجاعة جداً! هل تتذكرى عندما قممت بالغوص من عند تلك الصخرة ؟ لقد تحدثت لنتو مع والدتي وعطلة نهاية الأسبوع ٢٠-٢١ يوليو جيدة بالنسبة لي. ستتصل والدتي بوالدتك لتأكيد كل شيء.
لا أستطيع الانتظار لرؤيتك!

ريم

Language Focus

Adjectives الصفات

- We use adjectives to give more information about nouns :
- نستخدم الصفات لإعطاء معلومات أكثر عن الأسماء.
- An adjective precedes a noun or it follows verb to be.
- الصفة تسبق الاسم أو تأتي بعد (verb to be).
- ex. - It is a **small** cat. - This bag is **big**.

• Help your child recognize adjectives and adverbs.

- ساعد طفلك في التعرف على الصفات وظروف الحال.

Notes for parents

- Help your child look, read the text and learn.

- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر، يقرأ النص ويتعلم

Adverbs ظروف الحال

• We use adverbs to give more information about verbs.

تستخدم ظروف الحال لإعطاء معلومات أكثر عن الأفعال.

ex. - She walks **slowly**.

Formation التكوين

★ To make adverbs, we usually add (-ly) or (-ily) to an adjective.

يتكون الظرف من إضافة (-ly) أو (-ily) إلى الصفة المنتظمة. والظروف غير المنتظمة تحفظ كما هي.

adj. + (ly) (ily)

ex.	adjective الصفة	adverb الظرف
	They are quiet people.	These people speak quietly.
	Our team is bad.	Our team is playing badly.

Regular المنتظم			Irregular غير المنتظم		
Adjective	Adverb		Adjective	Adverb	
polite	politely	بطريقة مهذبة / مهذب	good	well	جيداً
quiet	quietly	بهدهوء	fast	fast	بسرعة
bright	brightly	بلمعان	hard	hard	بصعوبة
quick	quickly	بسرعة	right	right	بطريقة صحيحة
slow	slowly	ببطء	wrong	wrong	بطريقة خاطئة
happy	happily	بسعادة	late	late	متأخراً
nervous	nervously	بعصبية	early	early	مبكراً
heavy	heavily	بغزارة / كثيف			
active	actively	بنشاط			

• ونُضاف (ly) حتى وإن كانت الصفة منتهية بحرف (l)

• careful - carefully

• beautiful - beautifully

• الصفة المنتهية بـ (y) مسبوق بحرف ساكن يحذف حرف (y) ونضيف (ily)

• easy - easily

• happy - happily

• lazy - lazily

• hungry - hungrily



Pop Quiz on Language Focus

يقوم التلميذ بأداء تدريب تلقائي لإتقان القواعد اللغوية

★ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- My friend is a person.
a. nice b. nicely c. nicer d. nicest
- My sister says I sing
a. loud b. good c. badly d. bad
- This family lived after moving to a new apartment.
a. happily b. sad c. happy d. nervous
- The tortoise is It walks slowly.
a. quickly b. quick c. slow d. fast
- My cousin is very at playing tennis.
a. best b. better c. good d. well
- She ran, so she won the race.
a. quick b. fast c. slow d. good
- I did my homework I didn't want to make mistakes.
a. badly b. loud c. bad d. carefully
- Noha speaks politely. She is a speaker.
a. slowly b. polite c. loudly d. quietly
- Hatem is a clever designer. He designs
a. badly b. quick c. well d. loudly
- They worked so they won the first place.
a. hardly b. hard c. bad d. good
- Samir is a/an worker. He works quickly.
a. active b. actively c. brightly d. well
- Ola swims well. She is a swimmer.
a. nicely b. happily c. good d. heavily

• Ask your child to choose the correct answer.

• اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة.

General Exercises

- Create

- Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

1. I like nature trail trips.
2. I like to go to the Blue Lagoon.
3. Blue Lagoon is at Hurghada.
4. Blue Lagoon is a nice place for reading.

<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

- 2 Read and match (A) with (B).

1. Where did they ☐ a. rained heavily.
2. He did his ☐ b. in the Red Sea.
3. Wadi Degla is a nice ☐ c. decide to go ?
4. The weather was cold ☐ d. very brave.
- and it ☐ e. place to visit.
5. We can swim ☐ f. work happily.

- ☐ a. rained heavily.
- ☐ b. in the Red Sea.
- ☐ c. decide to go ?
- ☐ d. very brave.
- ☐ e. place to visit.
- ☐ f. work happily.

- 3** Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. wants - a trail - She - on - go - to.
2. nature - do - like - When - you - trail ?
3. politely - She - usually - speaks - parents - to her.
4. can - well - my - swim - father.

-  Read the text and answer the questions.

Hi Reem,

How's life ?

Guess what ? My family and I want to go on a trail to Wadi Degla or the Blue Lagoon at Dahab. Mom said I can take a friend, and I want to take you ! Can you come ? Mom said you and I can decide which we like best of the two places.

Wadi Degla is cool because you can see lots of animals, but you can swim at the Blue Lagoon ! I know you walk quickly and swim well, so which nature trail do you like ? Also, what dates do you prefer, 13 – 14 July or 20 – 21 July ?

Bye for now !

Dina

- A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. This text is about ".....".
a. A museum b. Sports
c. Furniture d. Nature trail
2. The underlined word "quickly" means
☐ slowly ☒ fast ☐ loudly ☐ sadly

3. Answer the following questions.

- ### 3. Why is Wadi Degla cool ?

- Who does Dina want to take with her?

- 5 Punctuate the following.

1. when do they decide to go home
2. my friend is an active person

- **6** Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

Nature trails

Guiding word:

- Blue Lagoon

- swim

مجاہد عنہ
فی، نہادۃ
المسجد

Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

★ Look, listen and repeat. انظر، استمع وردد.



scarf وشاح



hat



snacks



map



tent

hiking shoes
أحذية التنزهblanket
بطانيةsunglasses
نظارة شمسيةwater bottle
زجاجة مياه

Extra vocabulary

trading	التجارة	tourism project	مشروع سياحي
hunting	الصيد	local	محلي
community	مجتمع - مجتمعي	centuries	قرون
routes	طرق	hikers	متجولون
guides	مرشدين	culture	ثقافة
geography	جغرافيا	history	تاريخ
heat	حرارة	fascinating	مثير / مدهش
Maaza people	قبيلة المعازة	hiking trail	مسار التنزه
prepared	جاهز / مستعد	long-distance	مسافة طويلة
the Red Sea Mountain Trail	مسار جبال البحر الأحمر (جبل البحر الأحمر)	warm sweater	سترة دافئة

Notes for parents

• Help your child to look at the pictures, listen to the words and repeat them.

• ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور، يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددها.

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present

preserve يحافظ
follow يتبع
seem يبدو

Past

preserved
followed
seemed

Irregular

Present

run يجري/يمتد
fall يسقط

Past

ran
fell

Important expressions and prepositions

عبارات مهمة وحالات

- on the walk على الممشى
- look after يعتني بـ
- ran for around يمتد لمسافة حوالى
- fall over يسقط أرضاً
- in case فى حالة
- get thirsty يشعر بالعطش



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

يقوم التلميذ بأداء تدريب تلقائي على الكلمات السابقة بعد قراءتها

★ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The help tourists know more information about Egypt.
a. doctors b. guides c. teachers d. hikers
- It's so hot today, so I have my water
a. cycle b. bar c. bottle d. packet
- My are very useful. They protect my eyes.
a. sunglasses b. shorts c. shoes d. necklaces

★ Main points on listening and reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

- The Red Sea Mountain Trail was the first long-distance hiking trail.
كان متنزه جبل البحر الأحمر أول متنزه للمشى لمسافات طويلة.
- It is a community tourism project.
إنه مشروع سياحي مجتمعي.
- It helps the local Maaza people preserve their culture and history.
يساعد المتنزه قبيلة المعازة المحلية فى الحفاظ على ثقافتهم وتاريخهم.
- The Maaza people look after the trail carefully and work as guides.
تعتنى قبيلة المعازة بالمتنزه بحرص ويعملون كمرشدين فيه.

• Ask your child to choose the correct answer.

• اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة.

hiking (n) : a long walk in the countryside.

• المتنزه هو : المشى لمسافات طويلة فى المناطق الريفية.

★ Look, listen and read.

انظر، استمع واقرأ.

Pop Quiz | تدرب على ١٨ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

The Red Sea Mountain Trail⁽¹⁾ was the first long-distance hiking trail to open in Egypt. It runs for around 170 kms through the wonderful mountains near Hurghada. It is a community⁽²⁾ tourism project. It helps the local Maaza people preserve⁽³⁾ their culture and history. The trail follows ancient trading and hunting routes⁽⁴⁾ in the Eastern Desert. The Maaza people used these routes for centuries. They look after the trail carefully and work as guides⁽⁵⁾. They tell the hikers about the geography and history of this wonderful place. They also tell the hikers about their fascinating⁽⁶⁾ culture. It takes around ten days to complete the trail.



Check Vocabulary

- (1) متنزه جبل البحر الأحمر
- (2) مجتمعى
- (3) يحافظ على
- (4) طرق
- (5) مرشدين
- (6) رائع

كان متنزه جبل البحر الأحمر (درب البحر الأحمر) أول متنزه للمشى لمسافات طويلة تم افتتاحه فى مصر. يمتد لمسافة حوالى ١٧٠ كم عبر الحبال الرائعة بالقرب من الغردقة. إنه مشروع سياحى مجتمعى أنه يساعد قبائل المعازة المحليين فى الحفاظ على ثقافتهم وتاريخهم يتبع المتنزه طرق التجارة والصيد القديمة فى الصحراء الشرقية. استخدمت قبائل المعازة هذه الطرق لقرون. تعتنى قبائل المعازة بالمتنزه بحرص وتعمل كمرشدين. يقومون بإخبار المتنزهين عن جغرافية هذا المكان الرائع وتاريخه، ويخبرون المتنزهين عن ثقافتهم الرائعة. أيضًا يستغرق الأمر حوالى عشرة أيام لإكمال المتنزه.

• Describe the relationship between ideas

LEARN

1 Who looks after the trail ?

- The Maaza people look after the trail carefully and work as guides.

PRACTICE

2. How long is the Red Sea Mountain Trail ?

Notes for parents

• Help your child look at the picture, listen and read the text.

• ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصورة، يستمع ويفهم النص.

Audioscript

★ Listen, read and role-play.

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار.

Pop Quiz | تدرب على ١٨ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع



Hi Sherif, what are you taking on the Red Sea Mountain Trail ?

مرحبًا شريف، ماذا سوف تأخذ إلى متنزه جبل البحر الأحمر ؟



Hi! Well, I want to protect my feet so I'm taking some hiking shoes. I know there are a lot of hills and rocks so I don't want to fall over! I'm also going to take some snacks from home so I don't get hungry.

آهلاً! حسناً، أريد حماية قدمي لذا فأنا سأأخذ بعض أحذية التنزه. أنا أعلم أن هناك الكثير من التلدد والصخور لذا لا أريد السقوط. سوف أقوم أيضًا بأخذ بعض الوجبات الخفيفة من المنزل حتى لا أشعر بالجوع.



Hi Ramy, what are you taking on the Red Sea Mountain Trail ?

مرحبًا رامى، ماذا سوف تأخذ إلى متنزه جبل البحر الأحمر ؟



My friend said it gets very hot on the trail in the places where there are no streams, so I'm taking a hat for my head. I'm also going to take a blanket in case I get cold at night.

قال صديقى إن الجو سيصبح حارًا جدًا فى المتنزه فى الأماكن التى لا توجد بها جداول مياه، لذلك سأأخذ قبعة لحماية رأسى. سأقوم أيضًا بإحضار بطانية فى حال شعرت بالبرد فى الليل.



Hi Lama, what are you taking on the Red Sea Mountain Trail ?

مرحبًا لاما، ماذا سوف تأخذ إلى متنزه جبل البحر الأحمر ؟

• Help your child listen to the dialog and let him/her say what he/she listens to correctly, then ask him/her to role-play it with his/her colleagues.

• ساعد طفلك فى الاستماع إلى المحادثة ودعه يقول ما سمعه بطريقة صحيحة، ثم اطلب منه أن يتبادل الأدوار مع زملائه.

General Exercises

on Lesson 3

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Sarah is going on the Red Sea Mountain Trail.
2. She is taking some hiking shoes.
3. There aren't any rocks there.
4. She is going to take some games from home.

2 Read and match (A) with (B).

- | | | |
|-------------------------|---|------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. My hiking shoes | • | <input type="checkbox"/> a. Red Sea Mountain Trail ? |
| 2. You can take a scarf | • | <input type="checkbox"/> b. at reading maps. |
| 3. Who looks | • | <input type="checkbox"/> c. the heat ? |
| 4. She is good | • | <input type="checkbox"/> d. after the trail ? |
| 5. How long is the | • | <input type="checkbox"/> e. protect my feet. |
| | | <input type="checkbox"/> f. to protect your head. |

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. going – I'm – a blanket – take – to.
2. eyes – to – sunglasses – Take – your – protect.
3. fascinating – in Egyptian – is – culture.
4. worried – the – about – is – heat – why ?

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Next week, I'm going to climb Sinai Mountain with my friends. I think this will be dangerous but interesting. Sara, Noha, and Hala are getting ready for this adventure. Sara is going to take her scarf to protect her eyes and head. Hala loves checking the routes so she is taking a map. Noha is taking her sunglasses to protect her eyes. I'm going to take my hiking shoes to protect my feet.

Someone told me you can sometimes get sand in your eyes on the Red Sea Mountain Trail, so I'm taking a scarf to protect my head and eyes. The other important thing for me is to take lots of water bottles – I seem to drink more than other people so I want to be prepared.

أخبرني أحدهم أنه من الممكن أن تدخل الرمال بعينيك في متنزه جبل البحر الأحمر، لذلك سأخذ وشاحًا لحماية رأسي وعيني. الشيء الآخر المهم بالنسبة لي هو أن أخذ الكثير من زجاجات المياه، يبدو أنني أشرب أكثر من الناس الآخرين. لذلك أريد أن أكون مستعدة.

Hi Nesma, what are you taking on the Red Sea Mountain Trail ?

مرحبًا نسمة، ما الذي ستأخذينه على درب جبل البحر الأحمر الجبلي ؟

I love checking the route so I'm taking a map. And I'm going to take my cool sunglasses too to protect my eyes. It's going to be such fun!

أنا أحب التحقق من الطريق لذلك أنا سأخذ خريطة، وسوف أخذ نظارتى الشمسية الرائعة أيضًا لحماية عيني. سيكون ذلك ممتعًا!

Learn the meaning of the words.

LEARN

1. The underlined word "prepared" means.....

a. lazy b. ugly c. ready d. bad

PRACTICE

2. The underlined word "protect" means.....

a. waste b. play c. save d. talk

A. choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. The general idea of the text is about ".....".

- a. Celebrating festivals b. Climbing Sinai Mountain
c. Keeping our environment d. Using social media

2. The underlined word "interesting" means

- a. boring b. ugly c. bad d. fascinating

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Why is Sara going to take her scarf ?

4. What important things will they take with them ?

5 Punctuate the following.

what are you taking on the trail

6 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

Mountain trail

محباب عنه
منى نهاية
الكتاب

Guiding fact file :

• Where are you going ?	- The Red Sea Mountain Trail
• What do you need ?	- hiking shoes - scarf - sunglasses

Language Focus

The parts of speech أجزاء الكلام

How do you differentiate between nouns, adverbs, and adjectives?

كيف تفرق بين الأسماء، الظروف والصفات ؟

1. Nouns (n):

names for people, places, or things. هو اسم أشخاص، أماكن أو أشياء.

ex. - I need some help.

2. Adjectives (adj):

Adjectives describe the noun.

الصفات تقوم بوصف الاسم.

ex. - He is a fast driver.

- We add "-ful" to the noun to make an adjective.

• يمكن إضافة (-ful) إلى الاسم لتحويله إلى صفة :

• joy مفرح → joyful

• stress متوتر → stressful

3. Adverbs (adv):

Adverbs describe the verb.

ظروف الحال تقوم بوصف الفعل.

- We can add (-fully) to the noun to make an adverb.

• يمكن إضافة المقطع (-fully) إلى الاسم لتحويله إلى ظرف.

• care → carefully

• hope → hopefully

• Help your child learn how to differentiate between a noun, an adverb or an adjective.

- ساعد طفلك أن يعرف بين اسم وظرف وصفة

★ Read and learn.

اقرأ وتعلم.

Noun		Adjective (- ful)		Adverb (- fully)	
wonder	عجوبة	wonderful	رائع	wonderfully	بشكل رائع
beauty	جمال	beautiful	جميل	beautifully	بشكل جميل
hope	أمل	hopeful	متفائل	hopefully	على أمل
pain	ألم	painful	مؤلم	painfully	بألم
thought	فكرة	thoughtful	مدروس	thoughtfully	بعناية / بتأمل
meaning	معنى	meaningful	مفيد/هادف	meaningfully	بشكل هادف
stress	توتر	stressful	مُجهّد	stressfully	بشكل مرهق
care	عناية	careful	حذر	carefully	بحذر



Pop Quiz on Language Focus

يقوم التلميذ بأداء تدريب تلقائي لإتقان القواعد اللغوية

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

- It was the most bird I saw on the tree.
a. wonder b. wonderfully c. wonderful d. wonders
- There is too much natural in the Red Sea.
a. beauty b. beautifully c. beautiful d. beauties
- The cat ate from the bowl.
a. hunger b. hungry c. hungrily d. hungriest
- We all love our teachers, they are very
a. helping b. helpful c. help d. helpfully
- I have a new for our project.
a. think b. thoughtful c. thought d. thoughtfully

Notes for parents

- Help your child read and learn.
- Ask your child to choose the correct answer.














- ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعلم.
- اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة



★ Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد.

The sounds /n/ and /ŋ/ sound similar but are pronounced differently. الصوت /n/ والصوت /ŋ/ يشابهان لكنهما ينطقوا بطريقة مختلفة.

/n/			/ŋ/		
					
nose أنف	sun شمس	ton طن	sing يغنى	tongue لسان	finger إصبع
					
know يعرف	natural طبيعي		king ملك	hiking التنزه	ring خاتم
					
			rang دَقَّ	bang ضربة عنيفة	

How to pronounce /n/ :
You make the /n/ sound by blocking the air in your mouth with the front of your tongue.
يمكنك نطق الصوت /n/ بسد الهواء في فمك بمقدمة لسانك.

How to pronounce /ŋ/ :
You make the /ŋ/ sound by blocking the air with the back of your tongue.
يمكنك نطق الصوت /ŋ/ بسد الهواء بالجزء الخلفي من لسانك.

- Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.
- Help your child learn how to pronounce /n/ and /ŋ/ sounds correctly.

- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددهم.

- ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم نطق اصوات /n/ و /ŋ/ بشكل صحيح







Pop Quiz on

1 Look, read and complete.

1. I can see a ki _ _.
2. He's wearing a big ri _ _.
3. He's not looking at the su _.
4. He thinks it weighs a to _.
5. Then the phone ra _ _.
6. And he heard a big ba _ _.



2 Listen and write the missing sound.

1.  _ ose
2.  to _ _ ue
3.  fi _ _ er
4.  su _

3 Read and circle the odd one out.

- | | | |
|---------|------|------|
| 1. nose | king | sun |
| 2. know | ring | sing |
| 3. rang | bang | run |

Lesson

4

Part 3

CLIL: Math

Adding mixed numbers

★ Read and learn.

Mixed numbers are numbers which are whole numbers and fractions:

- الأعداد المختلطة عبارة عن أعداد صحيحة وكسور:
- We use mixed numbers in our lives all the time. For example:
- نستخدم الأعداد المختلطة في حياتنا اليومية طوال الوقت. على سبيل المثال:
- One nature trail is $2\frac{1}{2}$ kilometers long and another nature trail is $3\frac{1}{2}$ kilometers long.
- أحد طرق التنزه الطبيعية يبلغ طوله $2\frac{1}{2}$ كم، ويبلغ طول آخر $3\frac{1}{2}$ كم.
- How long are the nature trails in total? $2\frac{1}{2} + 3\frac{1}{2} = ?$
- كم يبلغ طول طرق التنزه الطبيعية في الإجمالي؟
- To add these together, add the whole numbers first: $2 + 3 = 5$
- لجمع الرقمين المختلطين معًا، نجمع الأرقام الصحيحة أولًا.
- Next, add the fractions together: $\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2} = \frac{2}{2} = 1$
- ثم، نجمع الكسور العشرية معًا.
- Add this to the whole number 5 and the total is 6.
- أضف مجموع الكسور العشرية إلى الرقم الصحيح (5) فيكون المجموع (6).



Pop Quiz on

1 Circle the correct answer.

- | | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. $2\frac{1}{5} + 3\frac{3}{5} = 5\frac{4}{5}$ or $5\frac{3}{5}$ | 2. $3\frac{4}{6} + 5\frac{1}{6} = 8\frac{5}{6}$ or $8\frac{7}{6}$ |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|

2 Add the mixed numbers.

- | | |
|----------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| 1. $2\frac{1}{5} + 1\frac{3}{5} = \dots\dots\dots$ | 2. $2\frac{1}{9} + 3\frac{3}{9} = \dots\dots\dots$ |
|----------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|

Ask your child to read and learn about the mixed numbers.
Ask your child to circle the correct answers.
Ask your child to add the mixed numbers.

اسأل طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعلم عن الأعداد المختلطة.
اسأل طفلك أن يحدد الإجابة الصحيحة.
اسأل طفلك أن يجمع الأعداد المختلطة.

Notes for parents

1. Ask your child to look at the pictures, read and complete the missing letters in each sentence.
اسأل طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور، يقرأ ويكمل الحروف المفقودة في كل جملة.
2. Ask your child to listen and write the missing sound in each word.
اسأل طفلك أن يستمع ويكتب الصوت المفقود في كل كلمة.
3. Ask your child to read and circle the odd sound out.
اسأل طفلك أن يقرأ ويحدد الصوت المختلف.



Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

★ Look, listen and repeat. انظر، استمع وردد.



cactus صبار

tamarisk plant
نبات الطرفاء (شجرة
بحبله الأغصان)palm tree
شجرة النخيلdesert snail
حزون الصحراء

jerboa

Extra vocabulary

weekend	عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	desert	صحراء
sweater	سترة	great	عظيم
milkshake	مخفوق الحليب	awesome	رائع / مدهش
free	متفرغ	emojis	رموز تعبيرية
conversation	محادثة	value	قيمة

Important expressions and prepositions

on the weekend	في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	Good idea!	فكرة عظيمة
That sounds like fun!	هذا يبدو ممتعاً	see you later!	أراك لاحقاً
at the corner café	في المقهى الجانبي	pick up	يصطحب (شخص) بالسيارة

Notes for parents

- Help your child look, listen to the words and repeat them.

- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر، يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددهم.

★ Listen and read. استمع واقرأ. | تدرب على ١٨ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع | Pop Quiz

Hi Malak! Are you free on the weekend? مرحباً ملك! هل أنتي متفرغة في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع؟

I'm good, thanks. Sure! What should we do? أنا بخير شكراً. بالتأكيد! ماذا علينا أن نفعل؟

My mom and dad want to do a desert hike. Do you want to come? أمي وأبي يريدان القيام بنزهة في الصحراء. هل تريدين أن تأتي؟

Yes, that sounds like fun! نعم هذا يبدو ممتعاً!

Great, should we pick you up? We don't want to go when it's too hot. عظيم، هل يمكننا أن نأخذك معنا؟ لا نريد الذهاب عندما يكون الجو حاراً جداً.

How about me coming to your house? ماذا عن مجيئي إلى منزلك؟

Good idea! فكرة جيدة!

What should I bring? ماذا يجب أن أحضر؟

Hiking shoes, water, and a sweater. أحذيه التزهر والماء وسترة.

Great! Let's meet on Friday at 4 pm? عظيم! لنقابل يوم الجمعة الساعة ٤ مساءً؟

Can't wait! لا يمكنني الانتظار!

Describe the relationship between ideas. اشرح العلاقة بين الأفكار.

LEARN

1. Is Malak free?
- Yes, she is.

PRACTICE

2. Where are they going?

• Help your child listen and read the text message conversation.

- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع وبقراً محادثة رسالة نصية.

Writing skill

Tips to write a text message نصائح كتابة رسالة نصية

- Use phrases to talk about plans استخدم العبارات للتحدث عن الخطط
ex. Are you free on the weekend ? هل أنت متفرغ في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع ؟
That sounds like fun! / That sounds great! / Cool! / Awesome!
هذا يبدو ممتعًا! / يبدو رائعًا / رائعًا / عظيم!
- Use set phrases for making suggestions استخدم عبارات محددة لتقديم الاقتراحات.
ex. How about / What about meeting up ? ما رأيك أن نتقابل ؟
Let's meet at 3. هيا نتقابل في الساعة ٣.
- Use emojis to make the conversation fun استخدم الرموز التعبيرية لجعل المحادثة ممتعة.
Use emojis to show things you want to represent, e.g. 🌵 a cactus for the desert.
استخدم الرموز التعبيرية لإظهار الأشياء التي تريد عرضها، على سبيل المثال: 🌵 صبار لتدل على الصحراء.

تذكير Note

Let's + inf.
should + inf.

هيا بنا
يجب أن

How about + inf. + ing ?
What about
ماذا عن / ما رأيك



Pop Quiz on writing skills

★ Complete the set phrases to use for text messages.

1. How about (go) to the club tonight ?
2. Let's (watching) a match tomorrow.
3. (Where) about meeting up ?

Notes for parents

- Help your child know the tips to write a text message. • ساعد طفلك أن يعرف نصائح كتابة رسالة نصية.
- Ask your child to complete the set phrases to use for text messages. • اطلب من طفلك أن يكمل العبارات المحددة لاستخدامها في الرسائل النصية.

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :

1. Sally is going to do a desert hike.
2. Sally is going to hike alone.
3. Rana doesn't like the desert.
4. They want to bring hiking shoes.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

2 Read and match (A) with (B).

- | A | | B |
|------------------|---|--------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Let's meet at | • | <input type="checkbox"/> a. see you later. |
| 2. How about | • | <input type="checkbox"/> b. is a desert animal. |
| 3. Cactus | • | <input type="checkbox"/> c. I bring ? |
| 4. Jerboa | • | <input type="checkbox"/> d. going to the park ? |
| 5. What should | • | <input type="checkbox"/> e. the club. |
| | | <input type="checkbox"/> f. grows in the desert. |

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. weekend – free – you – on – Are – the ?
2. about – to – How – tonight – the cinema – going ?
3. a desert – They – hike – to – do – want.
4. should – a sweater – you – and – bring – water.

4 Punctuate the following.

what should we do before traveling

TEST YOUR SKILLS

Getting out in the fresh air



If you got ● you need to revise the unit again on the next page.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على ● غير جيد قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في الصفحة التالية.

My Dictation

قياس مدى إتقان المفردات اللغوية

1 Read and write the meaning.

اقرأ واكتب المعنى.

- A. leaf _____
community _____
blanket _____
ring _____
sunny _____

- B. جدول (نهر مائي) _____
خريطة _____
نظارة _____
تنزه _____
لسان _____

My Reading

2 Read and complete the sentences using the words from the box.

اقرأ واكمل الجمل باستخدام الكلمات من المربع.

trail – free – grass – stream

- A _____ is like a river, but smaller.
- My family and I want to go on a _____ to Wadi Degla.
- Are you _____ on the weekend?

My Language

3 Read and tick (✓) the correct answer.

اقرأ وضع علامة (✓) أمام الإجابة الصحيحة.

- My friend is a _____ person.
☐ nice ☐ nicely
- He played the drums _____.
☐ good ☐ well
- The cat ate _____ from the bowl.
☐ hunger ☐ hungrily

My Writing

4 Write a paragraph from (4 - 6) sentences about :

"Nature trail"

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٤ - ٦) جمل عن متنزه طبيعي.

My Project

5 Design a perfect nature trail.

قم بتلوين الدائرة باللون المناسب لمستواك.

Review on unit 11



Adverbs

- They speak quietly.
- Our team are playing well.
- She eats hungrily.
- I drive the car quietly.

Adjectives

- They are quiet speakers.
- Our team is a good team.
- She is hungry.

A text message

- Use phrases to talk about plans
ex. Are you free on the weekend?
- Use set phrases to make suggestions
ex. How about / What about meeting up?
- Use emojis 🌳 🍷 to make the conversation fun!

• Help your child review unit 11.

• ساعد طفلك في مراجعة الوحدة الحادية عشر.



هذا الجزء يمكنك من ربط الكلمات التي درستها بجمل
ليساعدك على التمكن من مهارة القراءة والكتابة

1. Reading & writing skills :

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Nature	stream - river	A stream is like a river, but smaller.
	green - grass	I love the feeling of green grass.
	tree - branches	A tree is a very tall plant with branches and wooden trunk.
	rock - hard	A rock is hard. It is a large stone.
	plant - leaves	That plant has flowers and lots of green leaves.
The Red Sea Mountain Trail	distance - trail	The Red Sea Mountain Trail was the first long-distance hiking trail.
	Egypt	The Red Sea Mountain Trail is in Egypt.
	community	It is a community tourism project.
	preserve - culture	It helps the local Maaza people preserve their culture.
	trading - routes	The trail follows ancient trading and hunting routes.
Hiking	look after	The Maaza people look after the trail carefully.
	thirsty	You can get thirsty when you hike.
	hiking - shoes	I'm taking some hiking shoes for the trip.
	map - route	I'm taking a map to check the route.
	blanket - cold	I'm going to take a blanket in case I get cold at night.
Nature trail	place - nature	Natural trail is a place you go for a hike in nature.
	trail - fun	The nature trail trip sounds like fun.
	go on	I want to go on a trail to the Blue Lagoon at Dahab.
	swim	We can swim at the Blue Lagoon.
	cool - animals	Wadi Degla is cool because you can see lots of animals there.

Sentence Building

تدرب على كيفية تكوين جملة



2. How to make a sentence :

تدرب على تكوين جملة

الجملة الخبرية

1. was - sunny - It - day - a.

2. want - do - hike - I - a desert - to.

	فاعل	فعل	باقي الجملة
1			
2			

الجملة الأمرية

1. polite - Be - parents - with - your.

2. with - cactus - Don't - play.

	Don't	مصدر الفعل	باقي الجملة
1			
2			

الجملة الاستفهامية

(أ) السؤال ب (كلمة استفهام .. ؟)

1. dates - prefer - What - you - do ?

2. are - How - you ?

	كلمة الاستفهام	فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسي	باقي السؤال
1					
2					

(ب) السؤال ب (هل .. ؟)

1. you - get - Do - a milkshake - want to ?

2. you - Can - the - party - come - to ?

	فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسي	باقي السؤال
1				
2				

3. Writing skills :

٣. تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وافكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة (٢٤ جملة).

1 The Red Sea Mountain Trail

The Red Sea Mountain Trail was the first long-distance hiking trail in Egypt⁽¹⁾. It runs for around 170 kms through the wonderful mountains⁽²⁾. It is a community tourism project⁽³⁾. The trail follows ancient trading and hunting routes in the Eastern Desert⁽⁴⁾. The Maaza people look after the trail carefully and work as guides⁽⁵⁾. They tell the hikers about the geography and history of this wonderful place⁽⁶⁾.

2 Getting out in the fresh air

I love the feeling of green grass⁽⁷⁾. I like growing tomato plant because I like eating tomatoes⁽⁸⁾. Most plants have flowers and lots of green leaves⁽⁹⁾. A tree is a very tall plant⁽¹⁰⁾. It has lots of branches and a wooden trunk⁽¹¹⁾. I love the nature⁽¹²⁾.

3 Nature trail

The nature trail trip sounds like fun⁽¹³⁾. My family and I want to go on a trail to Wadi Degla or the Blue Lagoon at Dahab⁽¹⁴⁾. Mom said I can take a friend, and I want to take you⁽¹⁵⁾. Wadi Degla is cool because we can see lots of animals⁽¹⁶⁾. We also can swim at the Blue Lagoon⁽¹⁷⁾. I love the nature⁽¹⁸⁾.

4 What you need to pack on the Red Sea Mountain Trail

While being on the Red Sea Mountain Trail, we need some hiking shoes to protect our feet⁽¹⁹⁾. There are a lot of hills and rock so we don't want to fall over⁽²⁰⁾. We need to take a hat for our head⁽²¹⁾. We also need to take a blanket in case we get cold at night⁽²²⁾. We need to take sunglasses to protect our eyes⁽²³⁾. We need lots of water bottles⁽²⁴⁾.

Test on Unit 11

الاسم :
الصف :
التاريخ : / /

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Manar is in primary two.
2. She is excited to start the second term at school.
3. She doesn't like her school.
4. She prepares her backpack for school.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

2 Listen and complete.

1. Earth is on April 22nd.
2. Earth Day is celebrated in about 200
3. Every year, it is a big in many countries.
4. We should keep the healthy.

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

- | | | |
|--------------------------|---|----------------------------------------------|
| A | | B |
| 1. Talia is wearing | • | <input type="checkbox"/> a. of green leaves. |
| 2. It's difficult to | • | <input type="checkbox"/> b. at the sky. |
| 3. Nour accepted | • | <input type="checkbox"/> c. trunk. |
| 4. The plant has lots | • | <input type="checkbox"/> d. climb that hill. |
| 5. The tree has a wooden | • | <input type="checkbox"/> e. a big ring. |
| | | <input type="checkbox"/> f. the invitation. |

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

The Red Sea Mountain Trail was the first long-distance hiking trail to open in Egypt. It is a community tourism project that helps the local Maaza people preserve their culture and history. The trail follows ancient trading and hunting routes in the Eastern Desert that the Maaza people used for centuries so the Maaza people look after the trail carefully and work as guides. It takes around ten days to complete the trail.

A. choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

- The general idea of the text is about the ".....".
 a. Eastern Desert b. History of Egypt
 c. Red Sea Mountain Trail d. Mountains in Egypt
- The underlined word "preserve" means to
 a. close b. open c. protect d. talk

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Why do the Maaza people look after the trail ?

4. How long does it take to complete the trail ?

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

- too – She – fast – drove – the car.
- people – look – the – the trail – Maaza – after.
- The beauty – is – the sun – of – incredible.
- looking – the – What – king – at – is ?

6 Punctuate the following.

- she packed her bag for the trip
- do you want to get a milkshake

7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

Your next holiday

مجاب عنه
في نهاية
الكتاب

Guiding questions

- Where are you going ?
- What are you going to do ?

UNIT 12 Vacations

العطلات



• التفهيمات الشهرية في خراصة المعاصر التفاعلية.
 Dictation في نهاية الوحدة.

Test your skills في نهاية الوحدة.

Reading and Writing Skill في نهاية الوحدة.

تدريبات للأهر التدريس في نهاية الكتاب.

للشأن
الوحدة

Aims of unit twelve :

In this unit I will

- listen, read, research, and write about vacations.
 - استمع، اقرأ، أبحث واكتب عن العطلات.
- think about environmental responsibility.
 - أفكر في المسؤولية البيئية.
- learn about natural and man-made resources.
 - أتعلم عن الموارد الطبيعية والموارد التي من صنع الإنسان.
- practice using prepositions of time.
 - أتدرب على استخدام حروف الجر الخاصة بالوقت.
- listen to a conversation.
 - أستمع إلى محادثة.

الأهداف العامة للوحدة الثانية عشر :
 في هذه الوحدة سوف

- learn about different types of triangles.
 - أتعلم عن أنواع مختلفة من المثلثات.
- read and say words with the th sound.
 - اقرأ وأقول كلمات بصوت th.
- think about my perfect vacation.
 - أفكر في عطلةتي المثالية.
- write a diary entry for my best day on vacation.
 - أكتب يومياتي لأفضل يوم لي في العطلة.
- write an (ad) for a vacation destination.
 - أكتب إعلاناً عن وجهة العطلة.



Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

★ Look and listen. انظر واستمع.



ticket تذكرة



suitcase حقيبة سفر



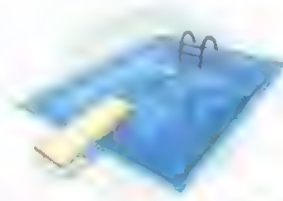
hotel فندق



tourist سائح



passport جواز سفر



swimming pool حمام سباحة

Extra vocabulary

husband	زوج	hotel room	غرفة فندقية
Singapore	مدينة سنغافورة	business trip	رحلة عمل
flight	رحلة طيران	daughter	ابنة
degree	درجة (مئوية)	footprints	آثار أقدام
luckily	لحسن الحظ	floor	طابق
both	كلاهما	airport	مطار
high-rise	متعدد الطوابق / ارتفاع عالي	island	جزيرة
theme park	متنزه / مدينة ترفيهية	aloud	بصوت عالٍ
vacation	عطلة	museum of ice cream	متحف الآيس كريم
destination	وجهة السفر	India	دولة الهند
Japan	دولة اليابان	huge	ضخم

Notes for parents

• Help your child look at the pictures and listen to the words. - ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور ويستمع إلى الكلمات.

Egypt is one of the most popular vacation destinations in the world. Millions of people visit Egypt every year.

مصر هي واحدة من أكثر الوجهات شعبية لقضاء العطلات في العالم. ملايين من الأشخاص يزورون مصر كل عام.

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Irregular

Present		Past		Present		Past	
receive	يستقبل	received		forget	ينسى	forgot	
believe	يصدق / يعتقد	believed		send	يرسل	sent	
pack	يحزم أمتعة	packed					

Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات مهمة

- on the roof على السطح
- travel around يسافر حول
- The Gardens by the Bay حدائق الخليج
- get through تمر من خلال
- on vacation في العطلة

★ Study these definitions. ادرس هذه التعريفات.

Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
passport	You need this to travel to a different country. أنت بحاجة إلى هذا للسفر.
beach	You can make sandcastles and swim in the sea here. يمكنك هنا إنشاء القلاع الرملية والسباحة في البحر.
hotel	This is somewhere to stay when you are on vacation. هذا مكان للإقامة عندما تكون في إجازة.
theme park	You can have fun here and go on different rides. يمكنك الاستمتاع هنا والذهاب في جولات مختلفة.
suitcase	You put your clothes and other things in this when you travel. تضع ملابستك وأشياء أخرى في هذا عندما تسافر.

• Ask your child to read and identify the definitions.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعرف على التعريفات.

Main points on listening and reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

- Nadia and her husband, Hany are on a business trip traveling around the world. نادية وزوجها، هانى فى رحلة عمل يسافران حول العالم.
- It's hot in Singapore – about 36 degrees. الجو حار فى سنغافورة - حوالى ٣٦ درجة مئوية.
- Singapore is a wonderful city. سنغافورة مدينة رائعة.
- Singapore is a busy city. سنغافورة مدينة مزدحمة.

★ Read and identify. اقرأ وتعرف.

Things you take on vacation أشياء يمكن أن تأخذها فى العطلة		Places you go on vacation أماكن يمكن الذهاب إليها فى العطلة	
- camera	- ticket	- beach	- theme park
- passport	- phone	- city	- swimming pool
- suitcase	- sunglasses	- hotel	- museum

Pop Quiz

★ Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

تدرب على ١٨ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Today Mom received an email from her sister Nadia, and her husband Hany. They are on a business trip traveling around the world. Nadia and Hany were in India last week, and this week they are in Singapore. Mom is reading the email aloud to her daughter Rana and her son Ali.



تلقت الأم اليوم رسالة بريد إلكترونى من أختها نادية وزوج أختها هانى. إنهما فى رحلة عمل يسافران حول العالم، وكانت نادية وهانى فى الهند الأسبوع الماضى، وهما فى سنغافورة هذا الأسبوع. تقرأ الأم البريد الإلكتروني بصوت عالي لابنتها رنا وابنها على.

Notes for parents

- Help your child look at the picture and read the email.

ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصورة ويقرأ البريد الإلكتروني.

To : Samiax@mail.com

Subject : My trip

Dear Samia,
Hello to you all from Singapore ! It's hot here – about 36 degrees. Luckily, we've got a lovely hotel room. We're on the 42nd floor. The view is beautiful and we can see the beach. There's a huge swimming pool on the roof of the hotel ! Can you believe it ? The flight from India took about six hours, but it was comfortable and we both slept. It didn't take long to get through the airport when we arrived – we got our suitcases straight away.
Singapore is a wonderful city. There are lots of high-rise buildings, but there are also many parks, gardens, and trees to sit under and relax. The Gardens by the Bay is a really special place where there are flowers and plants from all around the world. We spent a lot of time there. You really forget that you're in the middle of a busy city.
Yesterday, we went on a boat trip with some other tourists to an island. There is a theme park. It was so much fun ! After that, we visited the museum of ice cream ! I had a "Queen Bee" ice cream which is vanilla and honey with chocolate. It was great !
I hope you are all well. We will fly to Japan tomorrow and I'll send you another email when we arrive. Now I have to find our tickets and passports and pack our suitcases again !
Love,
Nadia

عزيزتى سامية
مرحباً بكم جميعاً من سنغافورة ! الجو حار هنا - حوالى ٣٦ درجة مئوية. لحسن الحظ، لدينا غرفة فندقية جميلة. نحن فى الطابق ٤٢. المنظر جميل ويمكننا رؤية الشاطئ. يوجد حمام سباحة ضخم على سطح الفندق ! هل يمكنك تصديق ذلك ؟ استغرقت الرحلة من الهند حوالى ست ساعات، لكنها كانت مريحة كلانا كان نائم. لم يستغرق عبور المطار وقتاً طويلاً عندما وصلنا - لقد حصلنا على حقائبنا على الفور.
سنغافورة مدينة رائعة. هناك الكثير من المباني الشاهقة، ولكن هناك أيضاً العديد من المتنزهات والحدائق والأشجار للجلوس تحتها والاسترخاء. تعد حدائق الخليج مكاناً خاصاً حيث توجد الزهور والنباتات من جميع أنحاء العالم. لقد أمضينا الكثير من الوقت. هناك. لقد نسيت حقاً أنك فى وسط مدينة مزدحمة. بالأمس، ذهبنا فى رحلة بالقارب مع بعض السياح الآخرين إلى إحدى الجزر وكان بها مدينة ترفيهية.
لقد كان الأمر ممتعاً للغاية ! بعد ذلك لقد قمنا بزيارة متحف الأيس كريم ! تناولت آيس كريم 'Queen Bee' وهو من الفانيليا والعسل مع الشوكولاتة. كان رائعاً !
أتمنى أن يكون كل شيء على ما يرام. سنسافر إلى اليابان غداً وسأرسل إليك بريداً إلكترونياً آخر عندما نصل. الآن يجب على أن أحضر تذاكر وجوازات السفر الخاصة بنا وأن أحزم حقائبنا مرة أخرى !

Demonstrate understanding of details.

جاءت فيمت التفاصيل

LEARN

1. They can see the _____ from the hotel room.

a. airport b. museum c. beach d. park

PRACTICE

2. "Queen Bee" is a kind of _____

a. animals b. fruits c. ice cream d. vegetable

General Exercises

on Lesson 1

نصوص
الاسماء
في نهاية الكتاب

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

- Yasser has three people in his family.
- His father is called Ali.
- His mother is a teacher.
- Yasser has two sisters.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

2 Read the text and answer the questions.

Last week, we went on a school trip to the zoo. We got on our school bus. When we got to the zoo, we got into groups. We walked all around the zoo. There were so many animals. We saw two giraffes. They were yellow and black. They were tall. The giraffes were from Africa. They eat grass and leaves. We saw four bears. They were brown. They could run, jump and hide near the tree. We saw a tiger. It was black and orange. It was from India. It likes to eat meat. It was a wonderful trip. We had a nice time there.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

- The main idea of the text is about ".....".
 a. A trip to the museum b. A birthday party
 c. A trip to the zoo d. A social media
- The underlined word "wonderful" means
 a. nice b. bad c. boring d. ugly

B. Answer the following questions.

- Which animal eats meat ?

- Where are the giraffes from ?

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

- a – they – went – to – Yesterday , – museum.
- the weekend – suitcases – packed – We – our – for.
- vacation – on – take – do – you – What ?
- Japan – We – fly – tomorrow – to – will.

4 Punctuate the following.

- where are Hany and Nadia now
- Today Mom received an email from nadia

5 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

A trip

مجاوب عنه
في نهاية
الكتاب

Guiding words :

- suitcase
- lovely

Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

★ Look and listen. انظر واستمع.



grain حبوب



gold ذهب



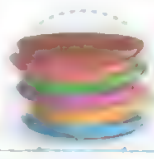
bicycle دراجة



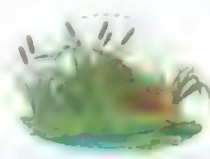
galabeya جلابية



sand رمال



plastic plates أطباق بلاستيكية



reeds قصب

Extra vocabulary

natural resources	موارد طبيعية	lucky	مفاجئ
man-made resources	موارد من صنع الإنسان	nature	طبيعة
materials	مواد خام	human	إنسان
stone	حجر	farmer	مزارع
leather	جلد	sunlight	ضوء الشمس
fertile banks	ضفاف خصبة	lucky	مفاجئ
tea	شاي	crops	محاصيل
bread	خبز	baskets	سلال
umbrella	شمسية / مظلة	market	سوق
cotton	قطن	shine	لمعان

Conjugation of verbs

Regular

Present

boil يغلي
harvest يحصد

Past

boiled
harvested

Irregular

Present

make يصنع
wake يستيقظ

Past

made
woke

Notes for parents

• Help your child look at the pictures and listen to the words.

• ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور ويستمع إلى الكلمات.

ask
want
rain

يسأل
يريد
يمطر

asked
wanted
rained

sell
be

يبيع
فعل يكون

sold
was / were

Important expressions and prepositions

- find in أمثلة ل يجد في
- put on يرتدي
- put into يضع في
- by plane بالطائرة
- examples of أمثلة ل
- live on يعيش على
- use (...) for يستخدم (...) ل

Main points on listening and reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

- Natural resources are materials we can find in nature. الموارد الطبيعية هي مواد نجدها في الطبيعة.
- Trees and stones are natural resources. تعتبر الأشجار والأحجار موارد طبيعية.
- Man-made resources are materials or things that humans have made. الموارد البشرية هي مواد أو أشياء من صنع الإنسان.
- Plastic bottles and cotton clothes are man-made resources. الزجاجات البلاستيكية والملابس القطنية هي موارد من صنع الإنسان.



Pop Quiz on vocabulary

يقوم التلميذ بإداء تدريب تلقائي على الكلمات السابقة بعد قراءتها

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

- Cotton, grain and reeds are
a. stones b. crops c. lessons d. classes
- We went to the to buy some vegetables.
a. school b. hospital c. market d. cinema
- My shoes are made of
a. gold b. iron c. cotton d. leather
- I like to wear It's comfortable.
a. galabeya b. umbrella c. stones d. plastic

• Ask your child to choose the correct answer.

• اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة.

★ Look, read and learn. انظر، اقرأ وتعلم.

Resources الموارد

Natural resources are materials or things we can find in nature. Trees and stone, are examples of natural resources.

الموارد الطبيعية هي مواد أو أشياء يمكن أن نجدها في الطبيعة. الأشجار والأحجار أمثلة للموارد الطبيعية.



Man-made resources are materials or things that humans have made. Plastic bottles and cotton clothes are examples of man-made resources.

الموارد البشرية هي موارد أو أشياء صنعها الإنسان. الزجاجات البلاستيكية والملابس القطنية هي أمثلة على الموارد البشرية.



★ Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

تدرب على ١٨ من قطع المفرد ومصنوع الاستماع

Pop Quiz

Farouk is a **farmer**⁽¹⁾ in Aswan. Every morning, he wakes up and puts on his **galabeya**⁽²⁾ and **leather**⁽³⁾ shoes. He boils some water for tea and eats some bread and fruit. Because Farouk lives in Aswan, he knows that the sun will **shine**⁽⁴⁾ most days. He is lucky that he lives on the fertile **banks**⁽⁵⁾ of the Nile so that he can use the water for his crops. Today, Farouk is harvesting the grain, putting it into baskets made from reeds, and taking it to sell at the market.



Check Vocabulary

- (1) فلاح / مزارع
- (2) جلابية
- (3) جلد
- (4) تشرق
- (5) ضفاف

Describe the relationship between ideas. وضح العلاقة بين الأفكار.

LEARN 1. Where does Farouk live ?
- He lives in Aswan.

PRACTICE 2. Where does Farouk sell the grain ?

Notes for parents

- Help your child look at the pictures, read and learn about resources. - ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور، ويقرأ ويتعلم عن الموارد الطبيعية.
- Help your child look and read the story. - ساعد طفلك أن ينظر ويقرأ القصة.

فاروق مزارع في أسوان. كل صباح، يستيقظ ويرتدي الجلابية والجلد الجلد. يغلي بعض الماء للشاي ويأكل بعض الخبز والفاكهة. لأنه يعيش في أسوان، يعلم فاروق أن الشمس ستشرق في معظم الأيام. إنه محظوظ لأنه يعيش على ضفاف النيل الخصبة حتى يتمكن من استخدام الماء لمحاصيله. واليوم يحصد فاروق الحبوب ويضعها في سلال مصنوعة من الجريد ويأخذها للبيع في السوق.

★ Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

تدرب على ١٨ من قطع المفرد ومصنوع الاستماع

Pop Quiz



Reem is going on **vacation**⁽¹⁾. She is traveling to Canada by plane. Today, she is packing her **suitcase**⁽²⁾. She knows that there is often rain in Canada, so she is taking her **umbrella**⁽³⁾. It can also

Check Vocabulary

- (1) عطلة
- (2) حقيبة سفر
- (3) مظلة

be cold there, so she is packing a sweater. Reem loves swimming and asked her friend in Canada if there was a place she could swim. Her friend said she didn't live near the sea, but she could swim in a river or a lake if she wanted to.

ستذهب ريم في إجازة. إنها تسافر إلى كندا بالطائرة. اليوم، هي تحزم حقبيتها. إنها تعلم أنه غالبًا ما تمطر في كندا، لذا فهي تأخذ مظلتها. يمكن أن يكون الجو باردًا أيضًا، لذا فهي تحزم سترة. تحب ريم السباحة وسألت صديقتها في كندا عما إذا كان هناك مكان يمكنها السباحة فيه. قالت صديقتها إنها لا تعيش بالقرب من البحر، لكنها تستطيع السباحة في نهر أو بحيرة إذا أرادت ذلك.

Demonstrate understanding of specific details وضح فهمك للتفاصيل

LEARN

1. Reem is traveling to Canada by
a. train b. car c. **plane** d. bus

PRACTICE

2. Reem loves
a. swimming b. jumping c. running d. sleeping

★ Read and identify. اقرأ وتعرف.

Natural resources		Man-made resources	
The Nile	water	galabeya	bicycle
sunlight	lake	leather shoes	plastic
river	sea	bread	baskets
crops	reeds		clothes
grain			

• Help your child look at the picture and read the text.

• Help your child read and identify nature and man-made resources.

• ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصورة ويقرأ النص.

• ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعرف على الموارد الطبيعية والموارد التي من صنع الإنسان.

General Exercises

on Lesson 2

نصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and complete.

1. Jack was a
2. On Sunday, Tom left the open.
3. Tom found Jack in the
4. Tom was when he found Jack.

2 Read and match (A) with (B).

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Natural resources are materials | <input type="checkbox"/> a. that humans have made. |
| 2. Man-made resources are materials | <input type="checkbox"/> b. ask questions. |
| 3. My father put on | <input type="checkbox"/> c. we can find in nature. |
| 4. Reem is traveling | <input type="checkbox"/> d. some water for tea. |
| 5. My mother boils | <input type="checkbox"/> e. his galabeya last Friday. |
| | <input type="checkbox"/> f. to Canada by plane. |

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

Farouk is a farmer in Aswan. Every morning he wakes up and puts on his galabeya and leather shoes. He boils some water for tea and eats some bread and fruit.

Farouk is lucky that he lives on the fertile banks of the Nile. He knows that the sun will shine most days. He can use the water for his crops. Today, Farouk is harvesting the grain, putting it into baskets made from reeds, and taking it to sell at the market.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. Farouk's shoes are made of
a. feather b. cotton c. plastic d. leather
2. The underlined phrase "puts on" means to
a. clean b. hear c. wear d. learn

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Summarize the second paragraph in one sentence.
.....
4. Where does Farouk sell his crops ?
.....

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. rain – Canada – in – is – often – There.
.....
2. their crops – farmers – can – What – use – for ?
.....
3. resources – of – Sunlight – is – an example – natural.
.....
4. suitcase – today – is – she – packing – her ?
.....

5 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

Man-made resources

Guiding elements :

- humans
- plastic bottles

محتاج عليه
من نهاية
الكتاب

Vocabulary

★ Listen and repeat. استمع وكرر

Key vocabulary

traditional	تقليدي	day trip	رحلة يومية
stalls	أشياء	handicrafts	منتجات محلية
diary	سجل / دفتر يوميات	bus ride	رحلة الحافلة

Extra vocabulary

complete	مكتمل	Jordanian	أردني / أردنية
crafts	حرف	desert tours	سياحة الصحراء
trading center	مركز تجاري	quite	أدنى / أعلى
destination	وجهة / المكان المقصود	chance	فرصة
tour guide	مرشد سياحي	colorful	ألوان

Famous countries and places

Memphis restaurant	مطعم ممفس	Roman Amphitheater	المنتدى الروماني
Amman Citadel	قلعة عمان	Abu Jaber Museum	متحف أبو جابر
Archaeological Museum	متحف الآثار	As-Salt	العين
Jordan	دولة الأردن	the Dead Sea	البحر الميت
Zambia	زامبيا		

Conjugation of verbs

Regular

Present	Past
enjoy يستمتع	enjoyed استمتع
explore يستكشف	explored استكشف
head يصدر / يتجه	headed توجه
reach يمتد / يصل	reached امتد / وصل
carry يحمل	carried حمل
land يهبط	landed هبط
wander يتجول	wandered تجول

Irregular

Present	Past
meet يقابل	met التقى
drive يقود	drove قاد
ride يركب	rode ركب
buy يشتري	bought اشترى

Important expressions and prepositions

- check in ينزل في (الفندق)
- walk through يمشي عبر
- about an hour away from حوالي ساعة من
- arrive at the airport يصل إلى المطار
- on the way for على الطريق لأجل
- after a late lunch بعد الغداء المتأخر
- head out of يخرج من
- float on the water تطفو على الماء
- write down يكتب / يدون / يسجل
- was born ولد

Study these definitions

Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
diary	is a book in which you write down things that happen to you each day. هو كتاب تدون فيه الأشياء التي تحدث لك كل يوم
diary entry	is a piece of writing in a diary. هي جزء من الكتابة في يوميات.

★ Look, listen and read. انظر، استمع واقرأ.

Desert Tours Trip to Jordan October 4 - 8

Day 1 : Arrive in Amman and check in to our hotel in the middle of the city. Enjoy some free time in the city before meeting at the Memphis restaurant for a traditional Jordanian dinner in the evening.



اليوم الأول : الوصول إلى عمان والتسجيل في فندقنا في وسط المدينة. استمتع بوقت فراغ في المدينة قبل أن نلتقي في مطعم ممفس لتناول العشاء الأردني التقليدي.

Day 2 : Today we enjoy a tour of Amman. Visit the famous Amman Citadel before exploring the Roman Amphitheater

Notes for parents

• Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

• ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددهم.

• Help your child read and identify of the given words.

• ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعرف على تعريف الكلمات المعطاة.

• Help your child look at the pictures, listen and read the text.

• ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصورة، يستمع و يقرأ النص.

and the Archaeological Museum. After a late lunch in a local restaurant, spend the afternoon and evening walking through Amman's many colorful markets.

اليوم الثاني : نستمع اليوم بجولة في عمان. قم بزيارة قلعة عمان الشهيرة قبل استكشاف المدرج الروماني والمتحف الأثري. بعد تناول وجبة غداء في وقت متأخر في مطعم محلي، يمكنك قضاء فترة ما بعد الظهر والمساء في التجول في أسواق عمان العديدة الملونة.

Day 3 : Today we head out of the city for a daytrip to As-Salt. About an hour away from Amman, in the ancient town of As-Salt you will find lots of local Jordanian culture. The markets are wonderful and there are many traditional arts and crafts to buy. We will visit the Abu Jaber Museum and discover the history of As-Salt as Jordan's important trading center.

اليوم الثالث : اليوم نخرج من المدينة في رحلة نهائية إلى مدينة السلط. على بعد حوالي ساعة من عمان، في بلدة السلط القديمة ستجد الكثير من الثقافة الأردنية المحلية. الأسواق رائعة وهناك العديد من الفنون والحرف التقليدية للشراء. سنزور متحف أبو جابر ونستكشف تاريخ السلط كمركز تجاري مهم في الأردن.

Day 4 : No visit to Jordan is complete without a trip to the Dead Sea. There is so much salt in this sea that you are able to float on the water ! You can also enjoy the Dead Sea mud, which is very good for your skin.

اليوم الرابع : لا تكتمل زيارة الأردن بدون رحلة إلى البحر الميت. يوجد الكثير من الملح في هذا البحر بحيث يمكنك أن تطفو على الماء ! يمكنك أيضًا الاستمتاع بطين البحر الميت، وهو مفيد جدًا لبشرتك.

Day 5 : After enjoying a relaxed breakfast, we leave at 11 am to drive three hours back to Amman. We will stop on the way for lunch before arriving at the airport at 5 pm.

اليوم الخامس : بعد الاستمتاع بوجبة إفطار ممتعة، نغادر الساعة 11 صباحًا لنعود لمدة ثلاث ساعات إلى عمان. سنتوقف في الطريق لتناول طعام الغداء قبل الوصول إلى المطار في الساعة الخامسة مساءً.



نُدرت على من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع استمع واقرأ. Listen and read.

Nahla's diary entry

Thursday, October 6th

Dear Diary,

Today was the best day ever ! I love anything to do with history – I always go to the museum at home, so today was a special day for me. The bus ride wasn't too bad. It only took an hour to reach our destination. I listened to music on the way and the time went quite quickly. When we arrived, we had the chance to wander through the streets and several people bought traditional Jordanian handicrafts from the stalls. I bought a lovely colorful rug. Saleh (our tour guide) was very kind and took it to the bus for me so that I didn't have to carry it around ! That was lucky because I spent hours in the museum !

الخميس 6 أكتوبر

مذكرتي العزيزة،

كان اليوم أفضل يوم على الإطلاق ! أحب أي شيء له علاقة بالتاريخ - سأذهب دائمًا إلى المتحف، لذلك كان اليوم يومًا مميزًا بالنسبة لي. لم تكن رحلة الحافلة سيئة للغاية. استغرق الأمر ساعة واحدة فقط للوصول إلى وجهتنا. استمعت إلى الموسيقى في الطريق ومر الوقت سريعًا. عندما وصلنا، أتاحت لنا الفرصة للتجول في الشوارع واشتري العديد من الأشخاص المشغولات اليدوية الأردنية التقليدية من الأكشاك. اشتريت بساط (سجادة) جميل ملون. كان صالح (مرشدنا السياحي) لطيفًا جدًا وحملها إلى الحافلة من أجلي حتى لا أضطر إلى التجول بها ! كان ذلك محظوظًا لأنني قضيت ساعات في المتحف.

Demonstrate understanding of specific details.

صح فهم التفاصيل

LEARN

1. Nahla bought a lovely colorful
toy book pen

PRACTICE

2. Nahla spent hours in the
a. museum b. office c. home library

• Help your child listen and read Nahla's diary entry.

- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ مذكرات نهلة اليومية.

★ Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

Vocabulary

basketball	كرة السلة	flight	رحلة جوية
go swimming	يذهب للسباحة	ready	مستعد
go shopping	يذهب للتسوق	remind	يذكر
dentist	طبيب أسنان	Shall we ... ?	هل يمكننا ... ؟
appointment	موعد	lunchtime	وقت الغداء

Audioscript

★ Listen, read and role-play. استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار.

Narrator 1



Hi Ayman, do you want to play basketball after school on Thursday ?

مرحبًا أيمن، هل تريد أن تلعب كرة سلة بعد المدرسة يوم الخميس ؟



On Thursday ? I'm sorry, I can't, I go swimming on Thursdays.

يوم الخميس ؟ آسف، لا أستطيع أنا أذهب للسباحة أيام الخميس.

Narrator 2



Hello Amira, shall we go shopping on the weekend ?

مرحبًا أميرة، هل يمكننا الذهاب للتسوق في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع ؟



Yes please, that sounds good! نعم من فضلك، تبدو فكرة جيدة!

Narrator 3



Fareed, remember you have a dentist's appointment this afternoon. تذكر لديك موعد طبيب الأسنان يا فريد وقت الظهيرة.



Oh yes, it's at five o'clock, isn't it ? نعم، إنه في تمام الخامسة، أليس كذلك ؟



Yes, that's right. حسنًا هذا صحيح.



Ok, thanks Dad. حسنًا، شكرًا يا أبي.

Narrator 4



Talia, our flight leaves at 11 am. ستغادر رحلتنا الجوية في الحادية عشرة صباحًا يا تاليا.



Ok Mom, I'll be ready. حسنًا والدتي، سأكون مستعدة.

Narrator 5



Mom, remember I'm playing football with Ramy in the morning. تذكرى يا والدتي سألعب كرة القدم مع رامى في الصباح.



Oh, yes, that's fine Sherif. Thanks for reminding me. حسنًا، هذا جيد يا شريف. شكرًا لك لتذكرك لى.

Notes for parents

- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددها.
- Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.
- ساعد طفلك في الاستماع إلى المحادثات القصيرة، ودعه يقول ما يسمعه بطريقة صحيحة، ثم اطلب منه أن يتبادل الأدوار مع زملائه.
- Help your child listen to the mini dialogues and let him/her say what he/she listens to correctly, then ask him/her to role-play it with his /her colleagues

Narrator 6



Mom, when are we visiting Grandma and Grandpa ?
متى ستزورين جدتي وجدتي يا والدتي ؟



We're going in July, Sara. Not long now.
سنذهب في يوليو، يا سارة، ليس وقتًا طويلًا.

Language Focus

Prepositions of time حروف الجر الخاصة بالوقت

- To say when something happens, we use prepositions of time.
لنخبر متى شيء ما يحدث، نستخدم حروف الجر الخاصة بالوقت.

1 on

• Before days of the week قبل أيام الأسبوع

ex. - I'll see you on Tuesday.

• Before specific dates قبل التواريخ المحددة

- The final exam is on June 29th.

• With special days or occasions مع أيام ومناسبات خاصة

ex. - I'll get many presents on my birthday.

• With these phrases مع هذه العبارات

- on holiday في إجازة
- on time في الوقت المحدد
- on the weekend في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع

2 at

• Specific time قبل وقت محدد

ex. - The first lesson begins at 8 o'clock.

• With these phrases مع هذه العبارات

- at night ليلاً
- at midnight في منتصف الليل
- at midday في منتصف النهار
- at lunchtime في وقت الغداء

Notes for parents

- Help your child know how to use prepositions of time.

ساعد طفلك أن يعرف كيف يستخدم حروف الجر الخاصة بالوقت.

0 in

• With times of the day

مع أوقات اليوم

- in the morning
- in the afternoon
- in the evening

ex. - in the morning, I always run for 30 minutes.

• With seasons, months and years مع فصول السنة والشهور والسنوات

- spring - summer - winter - autumn
- January - March - September
- 2012 - 1989 - 2000 - 2019

ex. - In summer I go to the beach.



Pop Quiz on Language Focus

يقوم التلميذ بأداء تدريب تلقائي للتقاع القواعد اللغوية

★ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We went back to our hotel about midnight.

- a. on
- b. in
- c. at
- d. next

2. The flight landed 4 o'clock.

- a. in
- b. at
- c. on
- d. under

3. It's warm October.

- a. at
- b. next
- c. in
- d. on

4. We go to the club Saturdays.

- a. at
- b. on
- c. in
- d. by

5. Reem's birthday is December 4th.

- a. by
- b. on
- c. in
- d. at

- Ask your child to choose the correct answer.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة.

General Exercises

on Lesson 3
(Parts 1&2)

unus
plurals
classroom

1 Listen and complete.

- Camels are called "ships of the _____".
- They can travel and _____ in the desert.
- They can also carry _____ things over long distances.
- They can _____ easily in the desert.

2 Read and match (A) with (B).

- | | |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>(A)</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> The Dead Sea mud is • A diary entry is a piece • We had dinner • We went to the hotel • My dad goes to his work in • | <p>(B)</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> the morning. at a nice restaurant. and checked in. good for your skin. of writing in a diary. for lunch. |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

On Monday, we arrived in Amman. The flight landed at 4 o'clock in the afternoon. It was about 26 degrees and I was surprised that it was so warm in October. We went to our hotel and checked in. Our room was very comfortable. Later that evening, we had dinner at the Memphis restaurant in the city center. Amman is a really busy city at night. We walked around the markets and bought some traditional handicrafts. We went back to our hotel at about midnight.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

- The underlined word comfortable means
a relaxing b ugly c bad d boring
- They bought some traditional from the market.
a cards b souvenirs c handicrafts d presents

B. Answer the following questions.

- Summarize the text in one sentence.
.....
- How is Amman at night ?
.....

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

- the weekend – we – on – go – shall – swimming ?
.....
- to visit – like – would – what – you – country ?
.....
- the weekend – park – I – the – on – go to.
.....
- go – on Saturdays – We – to – club – the.
.....

5 Punctuate the following.

- our tour guide was very kind
.....
- how many museums can you visit
.....



Vocabulary

★ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Key vocabulary

bench	مقعد	Al-Azhar Park	حديقة الأزهر
awesome	رائع / مدهش	away	بعيدًا

Extra vocabulary

summer	صيف	possible	ممكن
job	وظيفة	group	مجموعة
playground	ملعب	meal	وجبة

Conjugation of verbs

Regular

Present		Past
stay	يقيم	stayed
phone	يتصل	phoned
agree	يوافق	agreed
seem	يبدو	seemed

Irregular

Present		Past
feel	يشعر	felt
come	يأتى	came
think	يفكر	thought

Important expressions and prepositions

• go on vacation	يذهب فى أجازة	• want to be	يريد أن يكون
• at the end of the afternoon		• feel better	يتحسن
	فى نهاية فترة ما بعد الظهر	• run past	يجرى أمام
• a bit low	متضايق قليلًا	• agree to	يوافق على
• That wasn't possible	هذا مستحيل		

Notes for parents

- Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددهم

★ Look, listen and read. انظر، استمع واقرأ.



Seleem was feeling sad. It was a hot summer, school was over and he wanted to go on vacation. His cousin Sherif was away at the beach and Seleem wanted to be there too. His family usually went on vacation with Sherif's family, but this year that wasn't possible – Seleem's dad had a new job and they had to stay in Cairo.

كان سليم يشعر بالحزن، كان صيفًا حارًا، وانتهت المدرسة وأراد الذهاب فى إجازة. كان ابن عمه شريف بعيدًا على الشاطئ وكان سسيم يريد أن يكون هناك أيضًا. عادة ما كانت عائلته تقضى إجازة مع عائلة شريف، لكن هذا العام لم يكن ذلك ممكنًا، فقد حصل والد سليم على وظيفة جديدة وكان عليهما البقاء فى القاهرة.

Marwan, his friend, phoned him, "Hey, how are you, Seleem?", "I'm feeling a bit low – I want to be at the beach," said Seleem.

"Well, this year you can't go, so let's find something else to do!" said Marwan. "I know, let's go to Al-Azhar Park".

"Hmm", said Seleem. "I don't know it, but it sounds interesting!"

اتصل به صديقه مروان قائلاً: "مرحبًا، كيف حالك يا سليم؟" قال سليم: "أشعر بالضعف، أريد أن أكون على الشاطئ". "حسنًا، هذا العام لا يمكنك الذهاب إليه، هل يمكنك ذلك، لذلك دعونا نجد شيئًا آخر لنفعله؟" قال مروان. "أعلم، لنذهب إلى حديقة الأزهر". قال سليم: "هممم، لا أعرف، يبدو الأمر ممتعًا!"

- Help your child look at the picture, listen and read the story.

- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصورة، يستمع ويقرأ القصة



Phonics

★ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

/θ/ "unvoiced"		/ð/ "voiced"	
thing شئ	ba'throom حمام / دورة مياه	these هـذه	father أب
Thursday يوم الخميس	south جنوب	those أولئك	they هم
think يفكر/يعتقد	birthday عيد ميلاد	this هذا	other آخري
three رقم ثلاثة	thousand ألف	with مع	clothes ملابس
Earth كوكب الأرض	mouth فم	mother أم	leather جلد
author مؤلف			
Pronunciation tips /θ/		Pronunciation tips /ð/	
1. Press your tongue against your top teeth. اضغط بلسانك على أسنانك العلوية.		1. Press your tongue against your top teeth. اضغط بلسانك على أسنانك العلوية.	
2. The /θ/ sound is unvoiced. صوت /θ/ لا تهتز الأحبال الصوتية عند نطقه.		2. There is no air when you say the voiced sound. لا يوجد هواء عند نطق هذا الصوت.	
3. We feel some air on our hands when we say unvoiced sound. يمكن أن نشعر بالهواء على أيدينا عند قول هذا الصوت.		3. We can feel a vibration on our neck. يمكن أن نشعر بهتزاز في العنق.	

Seleem's mom agreed to take them to the park. She made a picnic, so when they arrived, they sat under a big tree on the cool green grass and enjoyed their food. It was such a beautiful day, and Marwan and Seleem played football. Suddenly Ramy and Maged, their friends from school, came running past.

وافقت والدته سليم على اصطحابهم إلى الحديقة. قامت بنزهة، لذلك عندما وصلوا، جلسوا تحت شجرة كبيرة على العشب الأخضر البارد واستمتعوا بتناول طعامهم. كان يومًا حارًا جميلًا، وكان مروان وسليم يلعبان كرة القدم. وفجأة جاء رامى ومaged، صديقاهما من المدرسة، راكضين.

"Hi Ramy!" shouted Seleem. "Why are you in the city? I thought you were at the beach!"

"No", said Ramy. "My grandma's ill so Mom wanted to stay in Cairo. There's a whole group of us who stayed at home and didn't travel. Can you come to the playground with us?" Seleem asked his mom and they all went together to the playground. Mom sat on a bench and enjoyed all the beautiful plants and birds in the park.

"مرحبًا رامى!" صاح سليم. "لماذا أنت في المدينة؟ ظننت أنك على الشاطئ!" قال رامى: "لا". "جدتي مريضة لذلك أرادت أمي البقاء في القاهرة. هناك مجموعة كاملة منا بقيت في المنزل ولم تسافر. هل يمكنك القدوم إلى الملعب معنا؟" سأل سليم والدته وذهبا جميعًا معًا إلى الملعب. جلست أمي على مقعد واستمتعت بكل النباتات والطيور الجميلة في الحديقة.

"I think this is a fantastic place", said Mom at the end of the afternoon. "I can see there's a show next week. Let's come back with Dad, see the show, and have a meal at the restaurant". Seleem felt very happy – now he knew his friends were in town and they had a wonderful park, it seemed that summer in the city would be awesome!

قالت أمي في نهاية فترة ما بعد الظهر: "أعتقد أن هذا مكان رائع". "أستطيع أن أرى أن هناك عرضًا الأسبوع المقبل. دعنا نعود مع أبي، ونشاهد العرض ونتناول وجبة في المطعم". شعر سليم بسعادة بالغة - الآن يعلم أن أصدقاءه في المدينة ولديهم حديقة رائعة، بدا أن الصيف في المدينة سيكون رائعًا!

- Help your child distinguish between /θ/ and /ð/ sound.
- Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

- ساعد طفلك أن يميز بين أصوات /θ/ و /ð/
- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددهم.

Language Focus

The suffix (اللاحقة)

The suffix : is a letter or group of letters added at the end of a word to make a new word :

اللاحقة : هى إضافة حرف أو مجموعة من الأحرف فى نهاية الكلمة لتكوين كلمة جديدة.

base	suffix	adjective
danger	-ous	dangerous
act	-ive	active

- ex. Ali swims and runs. He is very active.
 - Be careful ! That snake is poisonous.
 - Everyone knows Soha. She is famous.



Pop Quiz on Language Focus

يقوم التلميذ بأداء تدريب تلقائى لإتقان القواعد اللغوية

★ Add the suffix (- ous or - ive) to make adjectives and write the new word.

base	+	suffix	=	adjective
fame	+	ous	=	famous
poison	+		=	
expense	+		=	
create	+		=	



Notes for parents

- Help your child identify the meaning of the suffix.
 - Ask your child to add the suffix " - ous or - ive" to the base word and write the new word.
- ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على معنى اللاحقة.
 اطلب من طفلك أن يضيف اللاحقة " - ous أو - ive" إلى الكلمة الأساسية ويكتب الكلمة الجديدة.

General Exercises

on Lesson 4
(Parts 1&2)

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Tarek is so excited about his next vacation.
2. He will go to the beach with his friends.
3. Tarek will build a sandcastle.
4. His teacher will help him to swim in the sea.

2 Read the text and answer the questions.

Al-Azhar Park is the largest and most beautiful park in Cairo. We can spend a lot of time there. There are tall trees and it has more plants. It also has a lake and cafes, too. There is a space for all your family to have a big picnic.

Mom agreed to take us to Al-Azhar Park yesterday. She made a picnic, so when we arrived, we sat under a big tree on the cool grass and enjoyed our food. I met my friends there. It was such a beautiful day, and we played football together. Mom sat on a bench and enjoyed all the beautiful plants and birds in the park. We had a nice time there.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. When they arrived, they sat under a big
 a. umbrella b. tree c. palm tree d. roof
2. The underlined word "largest" means
 a. tallest b. hottest c. shortest d. biggest

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence.

Who met the writer at the park ?

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. us – with – come to – you – Can – the park ?

2. dad – new – had – Salam's – a – job.

3. in Cairo – a fantastic – Al Azhar – is – Park – place.

4. did – eat – the park – What – you – in ?

4 Punctuate the following.

1. many tourists come to visit egypt.

2. what did you eat in the park

5 Write a paragraph of Forty (40) words using the following guiding elements.

Al-Azhar Park

مجاوب عنه
من نهاية
الكتاب

Guiding questions :

- What things did you do in Al-Azhar Park ?
- Who did you go with ?



Vocabulary

★ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Key vocabulary

triangle	مثلث	side	جانب
shape	شكل	equilateral triangle	مثلث متساوي الأضلاع
right angle	زاوية قائمة	isosceles triangle	مثلث متساوي الساقين
length	طول	scalene triangle	مثلث مختلف الأضلاع

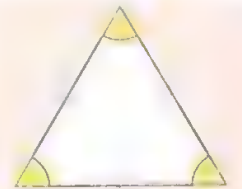
★ Look, read and learn. انظر، اقرأ وتعلم.

A triangle is a 2D shape with three sides.

المثلث هو شكل ثنائي الأبعاد بثلاث أضلاع.

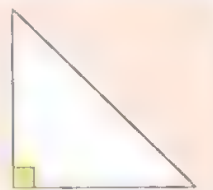
1 An equilateral triangle has 3 equal sides.

المثلث متساوي الأضلاع له 3 أضلاع متساوية.



2 A right angle triangle has 1 angle that measures 90°.

المثلث قائم الزاوية لديه زاوية واحدة قائمة قياسها ٩٠ درجة.



3 An isosceles triangle has 2 sides of equal length.

المثلث المتساوي الساقين لديه ضلعين متساويين في الطول.



• ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددهم.

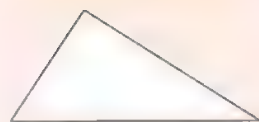
• Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

• ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور، يقرأ ويتعلم عن الأنواع المختلفة من المثلث.

• Help your child look at the pictures, read and learn about types of triangle.

- 4 A scalene triangle has 3 sides of different length.

المثلث مختلف الأضلاع لديه 3 أضلاع مختلفة الطول.



Pop Quiz on Math

- 1 Look and circle the correct triangle type.



right angle /
scalene



isosceles /
equilateral



right angle /
isosceles

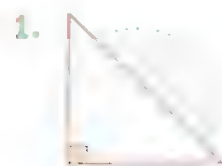


equilateral /
scalene

- 2 Read and complete.

1. An triangle has three equal sides.
2. A triangle has one angle that measures 90° .
3. An triangle has two sides of equal length.
4. A triangle has three sides of different length.

- 3 Look and write.



Notes for parents

1. Ask your child to look at the pictures and circle the correct triangle type.
2. Ask your child to read and complete the sentences with the correct word.
3. Ask your child to look at the shapes and write the correct triangle type.

Lessons 5&6

Writing Project



Vocabulary

- ★ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Key vocabulary

sights	مشاهد	snorkeling	رياضة الغطس
beach buggies	عربات الشاطئ	race	سباق

Extra vocabulary

special	خاص	busy	مزدحم / مشغول
perfect	مثالي	brightly - colored	دو ألوان زاهية
sand dunes	كثبان رملية	local dishes	أطباق محلية
chef	طاه / طبّاخ	French	فرنسي
meal	وجبة	formal language	لغة رسمية

Famous places and Countries

Ali Ben Youssef Madrasa	مدرسة علي بن يوسف (من أشهر مدارس المغرب)	Jardin Majorelle	حديقة ماجوريل (مدينة مراكش)
Marrakech	مدينة مراكش	The Eiffel Tower	برج إيفل
Morocco	دولة المغرب	the Louvre	متحف اللوفر
France	دولة فرنسا	Paris	باريس
Jemaa el-Fnaa	ساحة جامع الفنا (سوق في مراكش)		

Conjugation of verbs

Regular

Present	Past
try wait	حاول ينتظر
	tried waited

Irregular

Present	Past
speak understand	يتحدث يفهم
	spoke understood

- Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددهم.

Important expressions and prepositions

- made of مصنوع من
- keep up يواصل
- At the end of ... فى نهاية الـ ...
- go back يعود

★ Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

تدرب على ١٨ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع Pop Quiz

Reem

July 21st



Eiffel Tower, Paris, France

Dear Diary,
I had such a cool day today. I went on the river. We saw some famous sights from the boat, like the Louvre, a beautiful museum with fantastic paintings, and the Eiffel Tower. The Eiffel Tower is really tall and made of metal. I tried to speak French, but I couldn't really say anything. But the French people were very kind and when I spoke English, they understood me! At the end of the day we went to a French restaurant and had a wonderful meal with potatoes. It was a special day.

مذكرتى العزيزة،

لقد حظيت بيوم رائع. اليوم ذهبت إلى النهر. شاهدنا بعض المعالم السياحية الشهيرة من القارب، مثل متحف اللوفر، إنه متحف جميل ذو لوحات رائعة، و برج إيفل. فهو مرتفع حقًا ومصنوع من المعدن حاولت التحدث بالفرنسية، لكنني لم أستطع قول أى شيء حقًا لكن الفرنسيين كانوا طيبين جدًا وعندما البطاطس. لقد كان يومًا خاصًا.

Demonstrate understanding of details.

- LEARN** 1. Reem went on the
a. river b. office c. hospital d. library
- PRACTICE** 2. The Louvre is a beautiful
a. hospital b. museum c. street d. bank

Notes for parents

- Help your child look at the picture and read the text.

- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصورة ويقرأ النص.

Amira

April 5th



Marrakech, Morocco

Dear Diary,
I love this city! There's so much to do. Today we went to Ali Ben Youssef Madrasa, a beautiful museum that is 800 years old! We went early in the morning, but it was still very busy with people. We also visited Jardin Majorelle, a lovely garden where we had a picnic. I like it there because it reminds me a bit of Al-Azhar Park at home. But my favorite place is Jemaa el-Fnaa, the market place. The smells coming from the market stalls make me hungry! I had a sandwich yesterday. I can't wait to go back there tomorrow!

مذكرتى العزيزة،

أنا أحب هذه المدينة! هناك الكثير لفعله. ذهبنا اليوم إلى مدرسة على بن يوسف، متحف جميل عمره ٨٠٠ عام! ذهبنا في الصباح الباكر لكنه كان لا يزال مشغولًا للغاية بالناس. زرنا أيضًا حديقة ماجوريل، وهي حديقة جميلة حيث كان لدينا نزهة. يعجبني هناك لأنه يذكرني قليلاً بحديقة الأزهر في المنزل. لكن مكاني المفضل هو جامع الفنا، مكان السوق. الروائح القادمة من أكشاك السوق تجعلني أشعر بالجوع! تناولت سندوتش أمس. لا أطيع الانتظار للعودة إلى هناك غدًا!

Describe the relationship between two ideas. وضح العلاقة بين فكرتين

- LEARN** 1. Amira Jardin Majorelle.
a. played b. visited c. came d. made
- PRACTICE** 2. Jemaa el-Fnaa is Amira's favorite
a. place b. job c. food d. happy

- Help your child listen and read the text.

- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ النص.

★ Look, listen and read.

انظر، استمع واقرأ.

تدرب على ١٨ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع Pop Quiz

My perfect vacation

Day 1

In the morning, we go to the beach to go snorkeling. Swim with the turtles and brightly-colored fish! The afternoon can be spent on the beach with a picnic and a good book.



Day 2

Today we race through the sand dunes in beach buggies! It's fun and fast! Can you keep up?



Day 3

Spend a relaxed day shopping and wandering through the markets. Perhaps buy some traditional handicrafts to take home.



Day 4

Learn about the city's cultural past with a trip to the museum today. In the evening, we go to a traditional restaurant where you can see the chef making the local dishes.



عطلة المثالية :

اليوم الأول في الصباح نذهب إلى الشاطئ لنذهب للغطس. السباحة مع السلاحف والأسماك ذات الألوان الزاهية! يمكن قضاء فترة ما بعد الظهر على الشاطئ مع نزهة وكتاب جيد.

اليوم الثاني اليوم نتسابق عبر الكثبان الرملية في عربات الشاطئ! إنه ممتع وسريع! هل يمكنك متابعة؟

اليوم الثالث اقض يوماً مريحاً في التسوق والتجول في الأسواق. ربما تشتري بعض الحرف اليدوية التقليدية لأخذها إلى المنزل.

اليوم الرابع تعرف على الماضي الثقافي للمدينة برحلة إلى المتحف اليوم. في المساء، نذهب إلى مطعم تقليدي حيث يمكنك رؤية الشيف وهو يعد الأطباق المحلية.

Describe the relationship between ideas.

وصح العلاقة بين الأفكار.

LEARN

1. What did they do on the second day on their vacation ?
- They race through the sand dunes in beach buggies.

PRACTICE

2. How can we learn about the city's cultural past?

Notes for parents

- Help your child look at the pictures, listen and read the text.

- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور، يستمع ويقرأ النص.

Writing skill

Tips for writing a diary نصائح كتابة يوميات

- 1) write the date.

- 2) start with "Dear Diary".

When writing a diary, you should

- 5) write about how you felt.

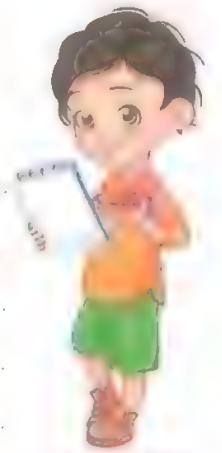
- 3) include personal pronouns like "I" and "me".

- 4) describe places and events.



Pop Quiz on Writing skill

★ Write a diary about something special you did



- Help your child know how to write a diary.

- ساعد طفلك أن يعرف كيف يكتب يوميات.

- Ask your child to write a diary about something special he/she does.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يكتب مذكرة عن شيء مميز فعله / فعلته

General Exercises

on Lesson 5 & 6

نصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Listen and complete.

1. There are five people in my
2. I don't have any or sisters.
3. My mom is a
4. My grandparents are staying in the first

2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. vacation – on – want to – you – **Do** – go ?
2. tall – Eiffel – **The** – Tower – is really.
3. museum – fantastic – **The Louvre** – is – a.
4. Morocco – so – to do – in – **There's** – much.

3 Punctuate the following.

1. who went on a boat trip
2. my favorite place is Al-azhar Park.

4 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

Your perfect vacation

Guiding elements :

- go snorkeling
- sand dunes

مجاب عنه
من نهاية
الكتاب

TEST YOUR SKILLS

Vacations

ممتاز
جيد جدا
جيد
غير جيد

If you got ● you need to revise the unit again on the next page.
فهم يتقنهم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على ● غير جيد فهم بحاجة لمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في الصفحة التالية.

My Dictation

قياس مدى إتقان المفردات اللغوية

1 Read and write the meaning

اقرأ واكتب المعنى.

- A. suitcase
sunlight
diary
daytrip
author

B.

إجازة

موارد طبيعية

شاطئ

جواز سفر

رحلة طيران

My Reading

2 Read and circle the correct answer.

اقرأ وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. We use a (hotel – passport) to travel to a different country.
2. Trees and stone are (man - made – natural) resources.
3. A (diary – story) is a book in which you write down things that happen to you.

My Language

3 Read and correct the underlined words.

اقرأ وصحح الكلمات التي تحتها خط.

1. I get up in nine o'clock every day.
2. At Saturdays, I like to stay at home.
3. His car is very expense.

My Writing

4. Write an email of 30 – 40 words to your friend Ali to tell him about your perfect vacation. Your email address is omar@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is ali@gmail.com

From :

To :

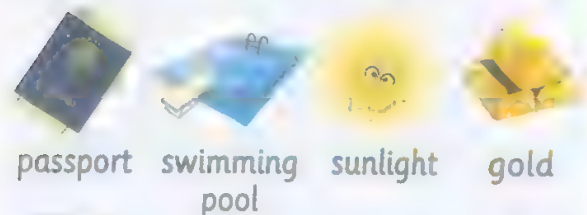
Subject :

فهم يتلوين الدائرة باللون المناسب لمستواك.

Review on unit 12



ticket suitcase hotel tourist



passport swimming pool sunlight gold



bicycle sand plastic plates water



Earth bathroom three



leather clothes mother



Prepositions of time

- I go swimming **on** Mondays.
- I am having a party **on** my birthday.
- We play tennis **at** lunchtime.
- We visit our cousins **in** June.
- I was born **in** 2000.
- They arrived **in** the morning.

- An equilateral triangle
- A right angle triangle
- An isosceles triangle
- A scalene triangle



Notes for parents

- Help your child review unit 12.

- ساعد طفلك في مراجعة الوحدة الثانية عشر.

Skills



هذا الجزء يمكنك من ربط الكلمات التي درستها بجمل
ليساعدك على التمكن من مهارة القراءة والكتابة

1. Reading & writing skills :

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Natural resources	nature	Natural resources are things we can find in nature.
	trees - stone	Trees and stone are examples of natural resources.
	sun	The sun is a natural resource.
	The Nile	The Nile is a natural resource.
	get - water	We can get water from the Nile.
Man-made resources	man-made	Man-made resources are things that humans have made.
	plastic bottles	Plastic bottles and cotton clothes are examples of man-made resources.
	galabeya	Galabeya is a man-made resource.
A trip	travel	We will travel to Singapore.
	business-trip	We are on a business trip.
	high-rise	There are lots of high-rise buildings.
	parks-relax	There are many parks, gardens, and trees to sit under and relax.
	boat-trip	We went on a boat trip with some other tourists to an island.
Vacation	places	We can go to many places on vacation.
	take-things	We can take a lot of things on vacation.
	phones - photos	We always take our phones, so we can take photos.
	huge - pool	There's a huge swimming pool.
	travel	We travel by plane or by train.
A farmer's diary	farmer	He is a farmer.
	wakes - puts	He wakes up and puts on his galabeya.
	lives on	He lives on the fertile banks of the Nile.
	crops	He uses the Nile water for his crops.
	harvests - grain	He harvests the grain and puts it into baskets.

Sentence Building

ندرب على كيفية تكوين جملة



2. How to make a sentence :

٢. نعلم كيف تكون جملة

1. went - a boat - We - trip - on.
2. had - a - day - I - cool - such.

الجملة الخبرية

فاعل	فعل	باقي الجملة
1		
2		

1. formal - use - language - Don't.
2. the - on - diary - Write - your - date.

الجملة الأمرية

Don't	مصدر الفعل	باقي الجملة
1	Don't	
2		

الجملة الاستفهامية

(أ) السؤال ب (كلمة استفهام .. ؟)

1. museums - you - How many - visit - can ?
2. did - meet - Who - the park - they - at ?

كلمة الاستفهام	فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسي	باقي السؤال ؟
1				
2				

(ب) السؤال ب (هل .. ؟)

1. want - on - Do - you - to go - vacation ?
2. natural - Are - resources - clothes ?

فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسي	باقي السؤال ؟
1			
2			

3. Writing skill :

٣. تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة (٢٤ جملة).

1 Resources

There are two types of resources, **natural resources** and **man-made resources**⁽¹⁾. Both of them are important⁽²⁾. Natural resources are materials that we can find in nature⁽³⁾. Trees and stone are examples of natural resources⁽⁴⁾. Man-made resources are materials or things that humans have made⁽⁵⁾. Plastic bottles and cotton clothes are examples of man-made resources⁽⁶⁾.

2 A special trip

On Monday, we arrived in Amman⁽⁷⁾. The flight landed at 4 o'clock in the afternoon⁽⁸⁾. It was about 26 degrees and I was surprised that it was so warm in October⁽⁹⁾. We went to our hotel and checked in⁽¹⁰⁾. Our room was very comfortable⁽¹¹⁾. Later that evening, we had dinner at the Memphis restaurant in the city center⁽¹²⁾.

3 My vacation

I am going on vacation next week⁽¹³⁾. I am traveling to Canada by plane⁽¹⁴⁾. Today, I am packing my suitcase⁽¹⁵⁾. I know that there is often rain in Canada, so I am taking my umbrella⁽¹⁶⁾. It can also be cold there, so I am packing a sweater⁽¹⁷⁾. I love swimming and asked my friend in Canada if there was a place I could swim⁽¹⁸⁾.

4 Al-Azhar Park

Last week, I went to Al-Azhar Park⁽¹⁹⁾. I went there with my family⁽²⁰⁾. My mom made a picnic⁽²¹⁾. We sat under a big tree on the grass and enjoyed the food⁽²²⁾. I played football with my brother⁽²³⁾. It was such a beautiful day⁽²⁴⁾.

Test on Unit 12

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

- Seleem was feeling happy.
- Seleem wanted to go on vacation.
- Sherif is Seleem's cousin.
- Seleem's dad had a new job in Luxor.

2 Listen and complete.

- Reem is going on
- Reem is traveling to Canada by
- Reem is packing her today.
- It can be in Canada, so Reem is packing a sweater.

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

- | | | |
|-----------------------------|---|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. You need a passport | • | <input type="checkbox"/> a. my suitcase for vacation. |
| 2. I pack | • | <input type="checkbox"/> b. a natural resource. |
| 3. I wake up at | • | <input type="checkbox"/> c. to travel to a different country. |
| 4. Sunlight is | • | <input type="checkbox"/> d. on the beach. |
| 5. You can make sandcastles | • | <input type="checkbox"/> e. 6 am every day. |
| | | <input type="checkbox"/> f. a man-made resource. |

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

I had such a cool day today. I went on the river. We saw some famous sights from the boat, like the Louvre, a beautiful museum with fantastic paintings and the Eiffel Tower. The Eiffel Tower is really tall and made of metal. I tried to speak French, but I couldn't really say anything. But the French people were very kind and when I spoke English, they understood me! At the end of the day we went to a French restaurant and had a wonderful meal with potatoes. It was a special day.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- They saw some famous sights from the
a. car b. plane c. train d. boat

- The word "special" means not
a. fun b. usual c. good d. easy

B. Answer the following questions.

- Summarize the text in one sentence.

- What language is the writer good at?

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

- did – in – eat – the park – What – they ?
- weekend – going – are – We – cycling – the – on.
- Saturdays – the club – Do – go to – you – on ?
- the beach – build – can – You – sandcastles – on.

6 Punctuate the following.

- what do you take on vacation
- our flight lands in the evening

7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

Al-Azhar Park

Guiding words :

- picnic
- wonderful

مجاوب عنه
منى نهاية
الكتاب

Review on unit 10

Vocabulary



library



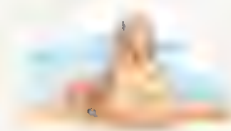
factory



bank



station



monument



museum



shopping mall



pharaoh

pronunciation

/əʊ/

go
show
below

/aɪ/

bite
kite
bike

/ɔɪ/

boy
coin
toy

/eɪ/

make
play
ache

Language

Imperatives

- Don't be late.
- Be quiet.
- Stand up.

Giving directions

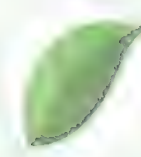
- Turn right.
- Turn left.
- Cross the road.
- Go straight.

Review on unit 11

Vocabulary



hill



leaf



rock



tree



grass



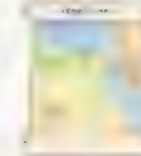
village



scarf



blanket



map



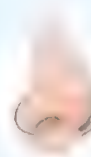
hat



sunglasses

pronunciation

/n/



nose



sun



ton

/ŋ/



finger



ring



king

Language

Past Simple Tense

- He did his homework happily.
- He worked hard.
- She drove the car too fast.

- The Red Sea Mountain trail is very beautiful.
- It was the most wonderful bird I saw on the trail.

Review on Unit 12

Vocabulary



hotel



passport



ticket



tourist



suitcase



gold



sunlight



sand



swimming pool



camera

pronunciation

/θ/

thing
Thursday
think
three

/ð/

these
this
with
mother

Language

Prepositions

- I go swimming **on** Mondays.
- I am having a party **on** my birthday.
- I was born **in** 2010.
- Our flight lands **at** 8 pm.

Suffixes

- Ali swims and runs. He is very **active**.
- His watch is very **expensive**.
- Be careful ! That snake is **poisonous**.

Fiction Reader

A Fantastic Family Adventure

مغامرة عائلية رائعة



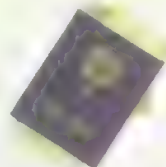
By Nicola Gardner

Review on Unit 12

Vocabulary



hotel



passport



ticket



tourist



suitcase



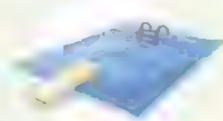
gold



sunlight



sand



swimming pool



camera

Pronunciation

/θ/

thing
Thursday
think
three

/ð/

these
this
with
mother

Language

Prepositions

- I go swimming **on** Mondays.
- I am having a party **on** my birthday.
- I was born **in** 2010.
- Our flight lands **at** 8 pm.

Suffixes

- Ali swims and runs. He is very **active**.
- His watch is very **expensive**.
- Be careful ! That snake is **poisonous**.

Fiction Reader

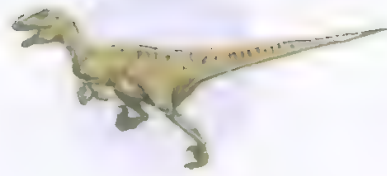
A Fantastic Family Adventure

مغامرة عائلية رائعة



By Nicola Gardner

Picture Dictionary



dinosaur ديناصور



bones عظام



skeleton هيكل عظمي



archaeologist عالم آثار



dig



tracks مسارات (آثار أقدام)



binoculars



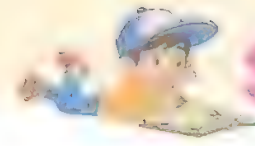
ibex

The main ideas of the story

- Uncle Youssef is working on the archaeological dig.
- العم يوسف يعمل في موقع الحفر الأثري.
- The family go on a nature trail.
- تذهب العائلة في درب الطبيعة.
- It's very important to take time to notice things on the trail.
- إنه من المهم جدًا أن تأخذ الوقت لتلاحظ الأشياء في الدرب.

• Help your child identify the picture dictionary and the main ideas of the story.

• ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على القاموس المصور والأفكار الرئيسية للقصة.



story map

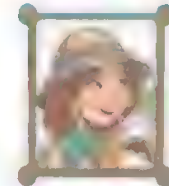
خريطة القصة



Dad الأب



Ramy رامى



Mom الأم

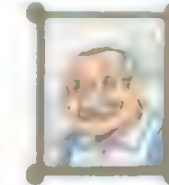


Sister أخت

The characters الشخصيات



Uncle Youssef العم يوسف



Grandpa الجد



Grandma الجدة

The setting المكان و الزمان

Places الأماكن

desert
الصحراء

grandparents'
village
قرية الجد والجدة

Ramy's
house
منزل رامى

Time الوقت

in the evening
فى المساء

in the morning
فى الصباح

Story plot حبكة القصة

Beginning بداية القصة



- A group of archaeologists found a skeleton of a dinosaur.
- وجد مجموعة من علماء الآثار هيكل عظمي لديناصور.
- The job of archaeologists is very important.
- وظيفة علماء الآثار مهمة جدًا.
- The family decided to go on an adventure in the desert.
- قررت العائلة الذهاب في مغامرة في الصحراء.

Middle نهاية القصة



- The family are ready to walk the nature trail.
- العائلة مستعدة للسير في درب الطبيعة.
- The family went near the place where they found the dinosaur skeleton.
- ذهبت العائلة بالقرب من مكان التي وجد فيه الهيكل العظمي لديناصور.
- Uncle Youssef is very interested in the rocks Ramy found.
- العم يوسف مهتم بشدة بالصخور التي عثر عليها رامى.

End نهاية القصة



- Ramy is disappointed.
- رامى محبط.
- Archaeologists found the skeleton because of climate change.
- وجد علماء الآثار الهيكل العظمي بسبب تغير المناخ.
- Ramy learned that it's important to look around us carefully.
- تعلم رامى إنه من المهم النظر حولنا بعناية.

• Help your child know the characters and the setting of the story. • ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الشخصيات والمكان والزمان في القصة.

• Help your child know what happened in the beginning, the middle and at the end of the story.

• ساعد طفلك على معرفة ما حدث في بداية ومنتصف ونهاية القصة.

Story in the newspaper

قصة في الجريدة



- Ramy and Malak are playing in the yard. Suddenly Dad calls them from the house.
- "Hey kids, come and see this story in the newspaper!"
- The children run inside to see. Dad says, "Look. They found something amazing near Grandma and Grandpa's village."
- "What is it, Dad?" asks Ramy. "It looks scary!"
- Dad says, "No Ramy, it's not scary at all. It's the skeleton of a dinosaur. A group of archaeologists found it. And your uncle Youssef is one of those archaeologists!"

- رامى وملك يلعبان فى الساحة. فجأة ناداهم والدهم من المنزل.

- "يا أطفال، تعالوا وشاهدوا هذه القصة فى الجريدة!"

- يركض الأطفال إلى الداخل ليروا. يقول الأب: "انظروا، لقد وجدوا شيئاً رائعاً بالقرب من قرية الجد والجدّة."

يسأل رامى: "ما هذا، يا أبى؟ إنه يبدو مخيفاً!"

يقول الأب: "لا يا رامى، إنه ليس مخيفاً على الإطلاق. إنه هيكل عظمى لديناصور، عثر عليه مجموعة من علماء الآثار. وعمك يوسف أحد علماء الآثار هؤلاء!"

suddenly	فجأة	newspaper	جريدة	skeleton	هيكل عظمى
dinosaur	ديناصور	archaeologists	علماء الآثار	scary	مخيف

The importance of Uncle Youssef's job

أهمية وظيفة 'أعمام يوسف



- "That's awesome, Dad!" says Malak. "The dinosaur skeleton is really old, isn't it?"
- "Yes, that's right, Malak." says Dad. "It's about 98 million years old!"
- "Wow! Uncle Youssef has got a really interesting job, hasn't he?" says Ramy.
- "Yes, he has. And his work is important too. It helps us learn about the past." says Dad.

• تقول ملك: "هذا رائع يا أبى!" "الهيكل العظمى لديناصور قديم حقاً، أليس كذلك؟" يجيب الأب قائلاً: "نعم، هذا صحيح يا ملك." "عمره حوالى ٩٨ مليون سنة!" يقول رامى: "واو! لقد حصل العم يوسف على وظيفة ممتعة حقاً، أليس كذلك؟" يجيب الأب قائلاً: "نعم، إنه كذلك. وعمله مهم أيضاً. إنه يساعدنا فى التعرف على الماضى."

awesome	رائع / عظيم	interesting	شيق / ممتع	important	مهم
---------	-------------	-------------	------------	-----------	-----



- Later that evening Ramy and his family are having dinner. Dad says, "Do you want to go there the next time we go to Grandma's house?"
Ramy says, "That's a great idea, Dad. It would be an adventure to go into the desert!"
Mom says, "There's a beautiful nature trail there. Why don't we walk that together?"
"Oh yes please, Mom! I love nature." says Malak.

- في وقت لاحق من ذلك المساء، تناول رامي وعائلته العشاء.

- يسأل الأب: "هل تريدون الذهاب إلى هناك في المرة القادمة التي نذهب فيها إلى منزل الجدة؟"
- يجيب رامي قائلاً: "هذه فكرة رائعة يا أبي، الذهاب إلى الصحراء سيكون مغامرة!"
تقول الأم: "هناك درب طبيعي جميل هناك. لماذا لا نسير معاً؟"
تقول ملك: "أوه نعم من فضلك يا أمي أنا أحب الطبيعة!"

village	قرية	adventure	مغامرة
nature	طبيعة	desert	صحراء



- "Ramy! Malak!" Grandma calls. She is so excited to see her grandchildren.
"I have prepared your favorite things - feteer and mint tea! Come inside and eat."
"Hello," says Grandpa to Mom and Dad. "It's so good to see you."
"It's lovely to be here," says Dad. "Tomorrow we want to take the children on a nature trail."
"Excellent," says Grandpa. "There's lots to see in our area. It's a beautiful place."

• الجدة تنادى: "رامي! ملك!" إنها متحمسة للغاية لرؤية أحفادها. "أعددت أشياءكم المفضلة -

فطير وشاي بالنعناع! تعالوا وتناولوا الطعام."

يقول الجد لأمي وأبي: "مرحباً"، "إنه من الجيد رؤيتكم." يقول الأب: "إنه من الرائع أن أكون هنا"

"غداً نريد أن نأخذ الأطفال في درب الطبيعة."

يقول الجد: "ممتاز. هناك الكثير لتراه في منطقتنا. إنه مكان جميل."

grandchildren	أحفاد	prepare	يعد / تهيئ	mint	نعناع
---------------	-------	---------	------------	------	-------

The nature trail

درب الطبيعة



- The next morning everyone is happy. They are ready to walk the nature trail. They are wearing hats, scarves, and sunglasses. They have snacks and water in their backpacks. Mom has some binoculars too. She wants to look at the amazing birds that live here. They are in a beautiful part of Egypt with many types of rare animals.

• فى صباح اليوم التالى الجميع سعداء. إنهم مستعدون للسير فى درب الطبيعة. يرتدون القبعات والأوشحة والنظارات الشمسية. لديهم وجبات خفيفة ومياه فى حقائب الظهر الخاصة بهم. أمى لديها بعض المناظير أيضًا. إنها تريد أن تنظر إلى الطيور المذهلة التى تعيش هنا. هم فى جزء جميل من مصر مع العديد من أنواع الحيوانات النادرة.

backpack | حقائب الظهر | rare | نادر | المناظير | binoculars

A perfect day for walking

يوم مثالى للمشى



- It's a lovely warm day, not too hot. It's a perfect day for walking. There are cactus plants and palm trees and they see sheep and some camels. Malak is very pleased because she loves animals. "Please walk quietly and carefully everyone," she says. "If we are quiet, we could see a fennec fox, or a dorcas gazelle, or maybe a sand cat." The family continue along the trail. Ramy sees animals' tracks in the sand. Dad takes a photo of a fennec fox. Mom sees many beautiful birds. Everyone is enjoying the trail.

• إنه يوم جميل ودافئ، وليس حارًا جدًا. إنه يوم مثالى للمشى. هناك نباتات الصبار وأشجار النخيل وهم يرون الأغنام وبعض الجمال.

تشعر ملك بسعادة بالغة لأنها تحب الحيوانات. وتقول "أرجو المشى بهدوء وبناية من الجميع. إذا كنا هادئين، يمكننا أن نرى ثعلب الفنك أو غزال دوركاس أو ربما قطة رملية". تستمر العائلة فى السير على طول الطريق. يرى رامى آثار الحيوانات فى الرمال. يلتقط الأب صورة لثعلب الفنك. ترى الأم العديد من الطيور الجميلة. الجميع يستمتع بالدرب.

cactus | صبار | sheep | أغنام | quietly | بهدوء | dorcas gazelle | غزال دوركاس | continue | يستمر | track | مسار (أثر أقدام)



- Then Mom says, "Hey everyone, I have something in my shoe. Can we stop for a minute?" She sits down. The others drink some water and wait. Ramy looks down at the rocks near the path. He sees some strange shapes inside them. "Look!" he says. "What are these things in the rocks, Dad?" "I don't know," says Dad. "They look like bones...." "We are very near the place they found the dinosaur skeleton," says Mom. "Maybe they are dinosaur bones!" Ramy is very excited. "Let's ask Uncle Youssef!" he says. "Dad, can we call him?" "Yes, of course," says Dad.
- Uncle Youssef is very interested in the rocks Ramy found. He tells Dad to take some photographs of them and meet him at Grandma's house for dinner.

- ثم قالت الأم: "مرحبًا بالجميع، لدى شئ فى حذائى. هل يمكننا التوقف لدقيقة؟" هى تجلس. يشرب الآخرون بعض الماء وينتظرون. ينظر رامى إلى الصخور القريبة من الطريق. يرى بداخلها بعض الأشكال الغريبة. هو يقول: "انظروا! ما هذه الأشياء فى الصخور يا أبى؟" يقول الأب: "لا أعرف". "تبدو مثل العظام...." تقول الأم: "نحن قريبون جدًا من المكان الذى عثروا فيه على الهيكل العظمى للديناصور" "ربما تكون عظام ديناصور!" رامى متحمس جدًا. هو يقول: "لنسأل العم يوسف!" "هل يمكننا الاتصال به يا أبى؟" يقول الأب: "نعم بالطبع".
- العم يوسف مهتم بالصخور التى عثر عليها رامى. ويطلب من الأب أن يلتقط بعض الصور الفوتوغرافية لها ويلتقى به فى منزل الجدة لتناول العشاء.

path مسار bones عظام strange غريب



Later that evening Dad shows Uncle Youssef the photos and Ramy shows him the place on the map. Uncle Youssef asks the family to go back there with him the next day.

فى وقت لاحق من ذلك المساء، عرض الأب الصور على العم يوسف ورامى يطلعه على المكان على الخريطة. يطلب العم يوسف من العائلة العودة معه فى اليوم التالى.

interested in	مهتم بـ	photographs	صور فوتوغرافية	meet	يقابل
map	خريطة	show	يظهر / يطلع على	go back	يعود

★ Ramy is disappointed.

أصيب رامى بخيبة الأمل.



• The next day they go back along the trail. They find Ramy's rocks and Uncle Youssef looks at them carefully.

"They are not dinosaur bones in the rocks," says Uncle Youssef. "But they are certainly very old. They are probably from a type of ancient ibex that doesn't exist now."

Ramy is disappointed because the bones are not from a dinosaur. But Uncle Youssef says, "Well done Ramy for finding them! It is important to take time to look at the world around us and watch things - just like an archaeologist! Now, would you all like to come to the dig and see my dinosaur skeleton?"

"Yes please, Uncle Youssef!" say Ramy and Malak.

• فى اليوم التالى تعود الأسرة على امتداد الطريق. يجدون صخور رامى وينظر إليها العم يوسف بعناية. يقول العم يوسف: "إنها ليست عظام ديناصور فى الصخور". لكنها بالتأكيد قديمة جدًا. ربما تكون من نوع من الوعل القديم غير موجود الآن.

أصيب رامى بخيبة أمل لأن العظام ليست عظام ديناصور. لكن العم يوسف يقول: "أحسن يا رامى للعثور عليهم! من المهم أن تأخذ وقتًا فى النظر إلى العالم من حولنا وملاحظة الأشياء تمامًا مثل عالم الآثار! الآن، هل تودون جميعًا القدوم للتنقيب ورؤية هيكل عظمى لديناصور؟" قال رامى وملاك: "نعم من فضلك يا عم يوسف!"

حيوان الوعل	ibex	نوع	type	من المحتمل	probably
يلدحظ	notice	محبط / خائب الأمل	disappointed	يوجد	exist

★ Climate change

تغير المناخ



• "Here he is," says Uncle Youssef. "What do you think?"

"Wow!" says Ramy. "It's amazing to think it lived millions of years ago."

"And that its bones were under the ground for such a long time." says Malak.

"In fact, we found the skeleton because of climate change." says Uncle Youssef.

"Now there is less rain and fewer plants. This means the ground is dry and the wind can blow away the sand. Things that were under the ground come to the surface. That's good for archaeologists but bad for the planet."

• يقول العم يوسف: "ها هو، ما رأيكم؟" يقول رامى "إنه لأمر مدهش أن نعتقد أنه عاش قبل ملايين السنين".

تقول ملك: "وعظامها كانت تحت الأرض لفترة طويلة". يقول العم يوسف: "فى الواقع، وجدنا الهيكل العظمى بسبب تغير المناخ.

"الآن هناك أمطار أقل ونباتات أقل. هذا يعنى أن الأرض جافة ويمكن للرياح أن تحرك الرمال. تظهر الأشياء التى كانت تحت الأرض على السطح. هذا جيد لعلماء الآثار لكنه سيئ للكوكب".

رياح	wind	تغير المناخ	climate change	أرض	ground
كوكب	planet	سطح	surface	تهب	blow

Getting ready to go home

الاستعداد للعودة إلى المنزل



- Later everyone is getting ready to go home.
"Thanks for showing us the dinosaur, Uncle Youssef," says Ramy "It was so interesting. I would love to be an archaeologist. It's such a cool job!"
"It's fascinating work, but it's hard," says Uncle Youssef, "Sometimes we look for years and don't find anything."
"We can help if you're looking for other dinosaurs!" says Malak.
"Thanks for all the delicious food." says Mom. "It was lovely to see you both again."
"Thank you dear. Come back and see us soon." says Grandma.
- "في وقت لاحق يستعد الجميع للعودة إلى منزلهم.
يقول رامى "شكرًا لعرضك لنا الديناصور يا عمى يوسف ، لقد كان الأمر ممتعًا للغاية. أحب أن أكون عالم آثار. يا له من عمل رائع!"
يقول العم يوسف : "إنه عمل رائع ، لكنه صعب ، أحيانًا نبحث لسنوات ولا نجد شيئًا."
تقول ملك : "يمكننا المساعدة إذا كنت تبحث عن ديناصورات أخرى!"
تقول الأم : "شكرًا على كل الطعام اللذيذ." "كان من الرائع رؤيتكم مرة أخرى."
تقول الجدة : "شكرًا لك يا عزيزتى. تعالى وقومى برؤيتنا قريبًا."

لذيذ | delicious | صعب | hard | رائع | fascinating

It's important to look around us carefully.

إنه من المهم أن ننظر حولنا بعناية.



- "So, did you enjoy our trip?" asks Mom in the car.
"Yes, I thought it was fantastic." says Ramy. "Me too!" says Malak.
"What do you think you learned from it?" asks Dad.
Ramy says, "I learned it's important to look around us carefully and notice things in our environment."
"Yes, that is how you can discover interesting things." adds Malak.
"You're right, kids" says Dad. "Well done!"
- تسأل الأم فى السيارة "إذًا، هل استمتعتم بالرحلة؟" يقول رامى : "نعم، اعتقد أنها كانت رائعة.
"تقول ملك : "وأنا أيضًا!" يسأل الأب : "ماذا تعتقدون أنكم تعلمتم من هذه الرحلة؟" يقول رامى :
"تعلمت أنه من المهم أن ننظر حولنا بعناية، ونلاحظ الأشياء فى بيئتنا." تقول ملك : "نعم، بهذه
الطريقة يمكنك اكتشاف أشياء مثيرة."
يقول الأب : "أنتم على حق يا أطفال، أحسنت!"

رحلة	carefully	بعناية / بحرص	بيئة	environment
يكشف	discover	kids	أطفال	well done
			أحسنت	

General Exercises

on story

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False) :

- Uncle Youssef is a farmer.
- Ramy finds fox bones.
- Dad reads a story about dinosaurs in newspaper.
- The village is far from the archaeological dig.
- Ramy wants to be an engineer.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

2 Read and match to make sentences.

- | | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>A</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Dad reads a story The children's grandparents Ramy finds old bones Uncle Youssef invites Ramy wants to be | <p>B</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> live near the archaeological dig. the family to the dig. about a dinosaur in the newspaper. an archaeologist in the future. in some rocks near the trail. |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The group of found the skeleton.
a. architects b. archaeologists c. vets d. doctors
- The archaeologists' job helps us about the past.
a. learn b. play c. say d. sell
- Dad shows the photos and Ramy shows him the
a. map b. food c. ball d. book
- The bones that Ramy saw were a type of ancient
a. lion b. tiger c. bear d. ibex
- It's important to look around us
a. badly b. carefully c. slowly d. fast

Notes for parents

- Ask your child to read and write T (True) or F (False).
- Ask your child to read and match column (A) with column (B).
- Ask your child to read and choose the correct answer.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكتب (T) صحيح أو (F) خطأ
- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويصل العمود (A) بما يناسبه من العمود (B)
- اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة.

General Exercises

on Units For Al-Azhar Students

تدريبات عامة على الوحدات خاصة بطلاب الأزهر

نصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

Unit (7)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer.

- Amany's new apartment is in (Cairo – Luxor – Giza)
- There are three in Amany's new apartment.
(kitchens – bedrooms – ovens)

2 Read and complete the dialogue.

bigger – kitchen – like

- Dina : Hi Lana, welcome to my new apartment.
Lana : Thanks ! Do you (1) living here ?
Dina : I love it ! It's much (2) than our old apartment.
Lana : What's better about this new apartment ?
Dina : The new (3) is bigger and the oven is more modern.
Lana : It's lovely.

Unit (8)

1 Read and choose the correct answer.

To stay healthy, it's very important to eat a variety of food, specially fruit and vegetables. It is very important to have good breakfast in the morning. You shouldn't have sweets every day.
Most of our body is water, so it is necessary to drink plenty of water every day. You shouldn't drink a lot of fizzy drinks because they aren't good for your health.

- Most of our body is
a. juice b. muscles c. water
- We shouldn't drink drinks.
a. cold b. fizzy c. hot

3. I like to eat and fruits to stay healthy.
 a. vegetables b. sweets c. candies
4. is very important in the morning.
 a. Dinner b. Lunch c. Breakfast
5. are very bad for our health.
 a. Fruit b. Sweets c. Vegetables

2 Write a short paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences about.

Different illnesses

.....

.....

.....

Unit (9)

1 Read and complete the dialogue.

wildlife – lions – Where

Ramy : Hi! I had a wonderful day out yesterday.

Omar : (1) did you go ?

Ramy : I went to the (2) park. It's awesome !

Omar : What did you see ?

Ramy : I saw the kangaroos and (3)

Omar : That's wonderful.

2 Choose the correct answer.

1. When I was 5 , I swim.
 a. can b. could c. can't
2. The snail has a
 a. shell b. leg c. arm
3. I take the bus, so I had to walk.
 a. can b. couldn't c. could

4. What can you ?
 a. do b. doing c. did
5. I play basketball very well now.
 a. can b. couldn't c. could

Unit (10)

1 Choose the correct answer.

1. I like to drink tea with
 a. stones b. rocks c. mint
2. We had lunch at an Italian yesterday.
 a. museum b. store c. restaurant
3. I usually go to the to read my favorite books.
 a. hospital b. library c. bank
4. Turn and go over the hospital.
 a. straight b. road c. right
5. do I get to the museum ?
 a. What b. Where c. How

2 Write a short paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences about.

"Alexandria"

.....

.....

.....

Unit (11)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. Ali went on a trail to last Friday.
 a. Luxor b. Wadi Degla c. Red Sea
2. Ali and Omar could see a lot of
 a. cars b. fruits c. animals

نصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

2 Read and complete the following dialogue.

should – free – about

Sara : Are you (1) on Friday ?

Malak : Sure.

Sara : How (2) going to Dahab ?

Malak : That's a good idea. What (3) I bring ?

Sara : Your sweater.



Unit (12)

نصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer.

- We went on a school trip last
a. week b. month c. year
- We went to the zoo by
a. bus b. car c. train

2 Choose the correct answer.

- We should have to travel to London.
a. candies b. tickets c. ice cream
- She packed a small for the weekend.
a. suitcase b. roof c. floor
- It's cold winter.
a. at b. next c. in
- We go to the park Fridays.
a. at b. on c. in
- Reem's birthday is December 4th.
a. by b. on c. in



Listening Texts

Unit 7

General Exercises on Lesson 1

• Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :

Hana's family moved to a new apartment in Giza. It's much bigger than their old apartment. The new apartment is near the Pyramids. There are three big bedrooms. Hana shares a room with her younger sister, Marwa. All the family like the new apartment.

• Listen and complete :

We live in a small apartment, but I like our apartment. It's comfortable and tidy. I have a small bedroom. There is one white bed in my bedroom. I have a wooden desk to study on it. There is a balcony in our apartment. You can see an amazing view from the balcony.

General Exercises on Lesson 2

• Listen and complete :

I love my apartment. I share my bedroom with my sister. In the middle of the room, there is an armchair. There are two cushions on the armchair. On the wall, there are lots of posters of animals.

General Exercises on Lesson 3

• Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :

Ancient Egyptians wanted to keep their homes cool. The mud bricks helped do this. Some people painted their homes white to make them cooler. Ancient Egyptian

homes all had flat roofs, which were the coolest part of the house. Families often slept on roofs on hot nights.

• Listen and complete :

In Ancient Egypt people in cities lived very close together, and so they built their houses taller, with two floors. City houses joined together, just like today. In the countryside, houses usually only had one floor, and they also had a garden. They grew vegetables and kept chickens there.

General Exercises on Lessons 5 & 6

• Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :

All around the world, people live in different types of homes. Many people live in apartment buildings. In Spain, many people live in villas with big swimming pools. Eskimos live in igloos. Igloos are made of huge blocks of ice.

• Listen and complete :

Hi! My name's Dalida and I like blogging about different things. This week I'm writing about unusual homes. This topic is very interesting for me because my mom's an architect, so she sometimes takes me to see some brilliant places. It's really awesome!

Test on Unit (7)

• Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :

In Ancient Egypt, many people made their homes near the Nile. They used its water for drinking,

cooking, and washing. They also used mud from the river to make bricks for their houses. The mud bricks made very strong walls. Ancient Egyptians built the walls of every house with mud bricks.

• **Listen and complete :**

The furniture in Ancient Egyptian homes was very different from today. There were reed mats to sit and sleep on. They used papyrus to cover the windows and doors. In every home, there were large pots and baskets for storing crops.

Unit 8

General Exercises on Lesson 1

• **Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :**

Fares went to the club. He had a good day there, but three of his friends didn't come. They have problems. Nada has a sore throat. Adam has a cold. Amr has an earache from swimming. The coach told Fares to be careful. Fares hopes his friends will be better soon.

General Exercises on Lesson 2 Parts 1 & 2

• **Listen and complete :**

A long time ago, there were six blind men who wanted to meet an elephant.

One day, a local farmer was walking along the road with an elephant that walked on his farm. The men wanted to touch the elephant. They would like to discover how it looks. The men were very excited and walked over to the enormous animal.

General Exercises on Lesson 3 Part 1

• **Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :**

Hi, I'm Tom. Today I have to stay at home. I'm not feeling very well. I have a headache and a cough. I think I have a cold. I will go to the doctor tonight. Mom gives me fresh orange juice to get better.

General Exercises on Lesson 3 Part 2

• **Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :**

Each afternoon, staff from a hospital in India turn the corridors into classrooms. The nurses become teachers and the family members become the students. This idea helps the families to care for their relatives when they go home. They can change a bandage or give an injection at home.

General Exercises on Lesson 4 Part 1

• **Listen and complete :**

Bees have 5 eyes and 6 legs. They see all colors except the red color. Worker bees go from one flower to another. In one collection trip, a bee visits 50 to 100 flowers! It takes 21 days for an egg to develop into an adult bee.

General Exercises on Lessons 5 & 6

• **Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :**

It's important to eat healthy foods like fruit and vegetables and to have a balanced diet. We can do lots of things to look after our health. You should do some exercise every day. It's very important to keep your body moving.

• **Listen and complete :**

We get energy from the food that we eat. We grow, walk and play because of the energy that we get from food. There are four different types of food and we must have a balanced diet to keep healthy. Our body needs protein to grow and becomes stronger.

Test on Unit (8)

1. **Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :**

I am Adam. I usually go camping with my friends. We go in the summer. Desert is hot so we need light clothes in the day. We need warm clothes at night because it is cold. We need a compass and a map if we go far into the desert so that we don't get lost.

2. **Listen and complete :**

You should do sports. It's very important to keep your body healthy. There are a lot of different sports you can practice. You can play football, basketball and tennis in the club !

Unit 9

General Exercises on Lesson 1

• **Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :**

Noha is interested in animals and birds. She likes kangaroos and penguins. The kangaroo lives in Australia. It jumps on two legs. The penguins live in cold places. They eat fish. Penguins can swim but they can't fly.

• **Listen and complete :**

Yesterday, Ramez went to a wildlife park with his family.

He enjoyed it very much. They saw lots of different animals like lions and kangaroos. He saw his favorite birds, the parrots. He was a bit sad because he didn't see the bats and he's doing a project on them at school.

General Exercises on Lesson 2 parts 1 & 2

• **Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :**

Trees are tall plants. They are very important for our Earth. Trees help clean the air. They give us a gas called oxygen. People and animals need oxygen to breathe. Many animals make their homes in trees. Some trees can also give us food.

General Exercises on Lesson 3 parts 1 & 2

• **Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :**

Rain falls from clouds in the sky. Some rainwater goes straight into the ground. But a lot of rainwater goes into streams, rivers, lakes, and then the ocean. The sun warms some rainwater and it becomes water vapor.

• **Listen and complete :**

Ahmed : What would you like to be, Ramy ?

Ramy : I would like to be a trader.

Ahmed : Why ?

Ramy : Because I like to buy and sell things. What about you ?

Ahmed : I would like to be a soldier.

Ramy : Why ?

Ahmed : To keep my country safe.

General Exercises on Lessons 5 & 6

• Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :

The dugong is a marine animal. It lives all his life in water. It eats grass from the sea bed. The dugong has got a lovely friendly face. It's cute. Its nickname is the sea cow.

Test on Unit (9)

• Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :

We cannot see or smell the water vapor and it doesn't stay on the ground. It rises in the air. It forms clouds. As the clouds become bigger, the water in them gets heavier. When the water in the clouds gets heavier, it falls to the ground.

• Listen and complete :

Artisans took the materials from the traders. Artisans made the materials into things for people to use. Farmers produced the food that was eaten by the pharaoh. Traders were the people who bought and sold everything in Ancient Egyptian society.

Unit 10

General Exercises on Lesson 1

• Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :

I am Omar. I'm Egyptian. I'm from Cairo. I moved to Alexandria last year. I work in a bank. My favorite place is the beach. There isn't one in Cairo! It can get very hot here in summer, so it's great to go to the beach and swim there.

General Exercises on Lesson 2

• Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :

Egyptians used to build their homes and tombs with brick. The brick was made with mud and then dried in the sun. These homes were built in different shapes. Their homes were very close to each other.

• Listen and complete :

There is lots of evidence that tells us about life in Ancient Egypt. Evidence is facts or signs that show clearly that something exists or is true.

Artifacts are things from daily life like vases and water carriers. Artifacts tell us how people lived.

General Exercises on Lesson 3

• Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :

I'm Adam. I want to have a nice home. A home is a place filled with joy, love and happiness. I want that home in the countryside. It is away from the noisy city centre. It has very big windows and balconies on each side.

General Exercises on Lesson 4 parts 1 & 2

• Listen and complete :

One day, a villager wanted to sell his beans in the market. He needed help because he couldn't walk far. His camel offered to help him. He took the sacks of beans to the market for his owner.

General Exercises on Lessons 5 & 6

• Listen and complete :

Last week, my friends and I

were in Rome. It was an exciting visit ! There were a lot of people but it was really cool! We went to a restaurant. We ate Italian pasta. It was delicious ! We took lots of photos. Then we ate ice cream. We arrived at our hotel at night.

Test on Unit (10)

1. Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :

My name is Carl. I live in London now, but I wasn't born in England. We moved to England two years ago. My dad got a new job in London. I have lots of friends in London. In summer, I went to the beach after school two or three times a week.

2. Listen and complete :

Mr Ali is a teacher. He is forty years old. He is thin and tall. He works at school. He teaches English. Every day, he gets up at six o'clock in the morning. He does exercises for thirty minutes. At half past seven, he drives his car to school.

Unit 11

General Exercises on Lesson 1

• Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :

Plants have four main parts : the roots, the stem, the leaves and the flowers. Each part has a very important job. The roots grow underground and hold the plants in a place. The leaves make food for the plants. The flowers make seeds for the plants.

• Listen and complete :

My favorite hobby is reading. I love to read books with pictures. The best books are about nature. I like to look at the pictures and read the words. In school, I can read books with my friends and my teacher. At home, I read with my mom.

General Exercises on Lesson 2

• Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :

I like nature trail trips. I think they are fun. I like to go to the Blue Lagoon at Dahab. The Blue lagoon is a nice place for swimming and diving. The water is very clean and clear. You will like the beautiful nature there.

General Exercises on Lesson 3

• Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :

Sarah is going on the Red Sea Mountain Trail. She wants to protect her feet so she is taking some hiking shoes. There are a lot of rocks and hills so she doesn't want to fall over. She is also going to take some snacks from home.

General Exercises on Lessons 5 & 6

• Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :

I'm Sally. I am going to do a desert hike with my mom and dad. I asked my friend, Rana to come with us. Rana likes the desert. We will pick her up at 6. We want to bring hiking shoes, water and sweaters.

Test on Unit (11)

• Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :

Manar is in primary five. She is excited to start the second term at school. She is excited to see her

friends again. She likes her school. She prepares her backpack for school.

• **Listen and complete :**

Earth Day is always on April 22nd. It is celebrated in about 200 countries all around the world. Every year it is a big holiday in many countries. We should think about what we can do to keep the Earth healthy.

Unit 12

General Exercises on Lesson 1

• **Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :**

My name is Yasser. I'm ten years old. There are six people in my family. My father is an engineer. His name is Ali. My mother is a doctor. Her name is Mona. I have two sisters, Salma and Sama. They are twins and are seven years old.

General Exercises on Lesson 2

• **Listen and complete :**

Tom has a dog named Jack. On Sunday, Tom left the gate open and Jack got out. Jack was lost. Tom looked for Jack at the park, but he was not there. Tom found Jack in the forest. Tom was happy when he found Jack.

General Exercises on Lesson 3 parts 1 & 2

• **Listen and complete :**

Camels are called "ships of the desert". They can travel and survive in the desert. Camels can also carry heavy things over long distances and can live in bad weather. Camels can walk easily in the desert.

General Exercises on Lesson 4 parts 1&2

• **Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :**

Tarek is so excited about his next vacation! He will go to the beach with his family. Tarek will build a sandcastle. His dad will help him to swim in the sea.

General Exercises on Lessons 5 & 6

• **Listen and complete :**

There are five people in my family. I don't have any brothers or sisters. My dad is 40 years old. He is a doctor. My mom is a dentist. My grandparents are staying with us in the first floor. I love my family.

Test on Unit (12)

1. **Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :**

Seleem was feeling sad. It was a hot summer and he wanted to go on vacation. His cousin Sherif was away at the beach and Seleem wanted to be there, too. Seleem's family usually went on vacation with Sherif's family, but this year that wasn't possible - Seleem's dad had a new job and they had to stay in Cairo.

2. **Listen and complete :**

Reem is going on vacation. She is traveling to Canada by plane. Today, she is packing her suitcase. She knows that there is often rain in Canada, so she is taking her umbrella. It can also be cold in Canada, so she is packing a sweater.

نصوص استماع الأزهر الشريف

Unit 7

Amany's family moved to a new apartment in Giza. The new apartment is near the Pyramids. There are three bedrooms and two bathrooms. The balcony is big. It has a lovely view. It's really exciting.

Unit 11

Ali went on a trail to Wadi Degla last Friday. He went there with his friend Omar. They could see a lot of animals in Wadi Degla.

Unit 12

Last week, we went on a school trip to the zoo. We got on our school bus. When we got to the zoo, we got into groups. We walked all around the zoo.



Answers of paragraphs

إجابات الفقرات الإنشائية الخاصة بكتاب الشرح

Unit 7

General Exercises on Lesson 1

"My apartment"

I live with my family in an apartment in Cairo. My apartment is big and there are many rooms. There are three bedrooms, a wide living room, a modern kitchen and two bathrooms. My mother has a modern oven in the kitchen. There is more space in the living room, so we have a big TV. We also have a fantastic balcony.

General Exercises on Lesson 3

"Ancient Egyptian homes"

Ancient Egyptian people looked after their homes. They were very simple and clean. They were very different. Ancient Egyptians used the mud of the Nile to make the bricks for their homes. The mud bricks made their homes cooler in summer. People used papyrus to cover doors and windows. All the houses had flat roofs.

Test on Unit (7)

"Unusual homes"

I'm interested in looking for unusual homes on the internet. I found an unusual house in the Netherlands. It's upside down. It's actually an old farmhouse. People are changing it to be modern. All the windows are at the top to get

a lot of light. It's very suitable for the local landscape of farms and fields. It's very cool.

Unit 8

General Exercises on Lesson 1

"Different illnesses"

There are many different illnesses. When you feel pain, you should go to the doctor. When my teeth hurt, I go to the dentist at once. We should look after our teeth, and brush them every day. We also should take the right medicine.

General Exercises on Lesson 2

"Incredible animals"

There are many different animals, but I think the elephant is the most incredible one. It's tall and strong. The elephant's leg is very strong. It looks like the trunk of the tree. The elephant can be very dangerous as it has pointed, strong tusks.

General Exercises on Lesson 3 Part 2

"A special hospital"

There is a special hospital in India. The hospital is always crowded because people come to visit patients. The staff of the hospital made something different. At the hospital, the staff teach the family members how to do useful things, like making bandages or giving injections. It's a great and special idea.

General Exercises on Lesson 4 Part 1

"Honey"

Honey is very special food. Honey isn't only a food. It's used as a treatment for some injuries and illnesses. Doctors use it as a medicine. Ancient Egyptians used it many years ago to treat wounds. It also can kill bacteria. We can mix honey with milk to make cough better. It's very useful food.

General Exercises on Lessons 5 & 6

"Staying healthy"

There are many things we can do to stay healthy. First, we should eat healthy food. Fruit and vegetables are very important for our bodies. We shouldn't have much sweets. Secondly, we should do exercises every day to keep fit. Finally, we should sleep well and drink much water.

Test on Unit (8)

"Water"

Drinking water is the most important thing for our bodies. We should drink 8 glasses of fresh water a day. The water of the River Nile is fresh. We can't drink the water of the sea. It's salty. Water is also important for growing crops. We can't live without water.

Unit 9

General Exercises on Lesson 1

"My favorite animals"

I like different animals, but my favorite animal is the camel. It is

very strong animal. It lives in the desert. It can carry heavy things. The camel can stay for a long time without water. People used camels in the past for carrying things and traveling through the desert. The camel can walk easily in the desert because it has flat feet.

General Exercises on Lesson 2

"What I could do when I was three"

When I was three, I could run and play with my brother and sister. Also, I could speak a little. My brother and sister helped me to know things around me and speak well. I enjoyed going with my parents to everywhere. I didn't like being at home all the time. My mother bought me a bike on my birthday.

General Exercises on Lesson 3

"Water cycle"

Rain falls from clouds in the sky. A lot of water goes into streams and rivers. When the sun shines, some water turns into vapor. It goes up into the sky. It's called water vapor. When water vapor gets cooler it changes into water. As clouds become bigger, the water in them gets heavier and falls as rain water. Then the cycle starts again.

Test on Unit (9)

"What job I would like in Ancient Egypt"

People in Ancient Egypt have different roles in society. The job I like most in Ancient Egypt is the

job of the scribe. Scribes were very important because they were usually the only people who could read and write. They trained for about 12 years before they wrote on papyrus. They wrote letters, records and important papers.

Unit 10

General Exercises on Lesson 1

"A visit to Alexandria"

I visited Alexandria last summer. It's a fantastic city. There is a lot to see and do there. It has amazing restaurants, stores and markets. The beaches are my favorite. I like swimming in the early morning. People there are so friendly. Also, there are some amazing museums. We enjoyed visiting Alexandria Library and Qaitbay Citadel.

General Exercises on Lesson 2

"Life in Ancient Egypt"

Ancient monuments and buildings in Egypt taught us a lot. These structures were built to celebrate important people. Hieroglyphics are Ancient Egyptian writing. Pharaohs and other important people were buried in beautiful tombs.

General Exercises on Lesson 3

"Library rules"

The library is amazing place. There are a lot of book we can

read. There are some rules we should follow there. We shouldn't eat in the library. We must bring the books back in two weeks. We shouldn't use our mobile phone. We shouldn't make noise there.

General Exercises on Lessons 4

"A lesson I learned"

When I was four, I didn't use to tell the truth to my friends. My parents told me to stop lying. I thought that was fun. One day, my best friend asked me about where is the park. I didn't tell him the right way. I told him where the museum was. I thought that was fun. When he went there, he was very angry. He decided not to talk to me again. I was sad. I learned from this day to tell the truth.

General Exercises on Lessons 5 & 6

"Our perfect town"

In our perfect town, there is a big zoo next to the school. We can go there every afternoon after classes. We can help to feed the animals. There is waterpark that's always open. There is a wonderful market that sells all kinds of food. There is a big park with lots of trees.

Test on Unit (10)

"My town"

I live in Hurghada. It's a beautiful town. Tourists come

from all over the world to visit it. It has many famous attractions. It's famous for its beautiful beaches and good weather specially in winter. There are many amazing restaurants. Their prices are good. You can practice your hobbies easily.

Unit 11

General Exercises on Lesson 1

"Nature"

I enjoy the feeling of green grass. Nature makes people relax. You can enjoy breathing fresh air and watching beautiful views of water or mountains or even fields. Green areas give us the sense of peace and relaxation. It's important to get out in the fresh air.

General Exercises on Lesson 2

"Nature trails"

The nature trail trip sounds like fun. My family and I want to go on a trail to Wadi Degla or the Blue Lagoon at Dahab. Mom said I can take a friend and I wanted to take my friend Doaa. Wadi Degla is cool because we can see lots of animals. Also, we can swim at the Blue Lagoon. I love nature so much.

General Exercises on Lesson 3

"Mountain trail"

The Red Sea Mountain Trail was the first long - distance hiking

trail in Egypt. It runs for around 170 kms through the wonderful mountains. It's a community tourism project. The trail follows ancient trading and hunting routes in the Eastern Desert. The Mazza people look after the trail carefully and work as guides.

Test on Unit (11)

"My next holiday"

My next holiday will be in Alexandria. It's my favorite city in summer. Everything there is perfect. I enjoy the beautiful beaches as I like swimming. You can visit many interesting places there. I enjoy having my dinner at a restaurant. People there are very friendly and helpful. The weather is very good.

Unit 12

General Exercises on Lesson 1

"A trip"

My uncle usually goes for business trips. He is a famous businessman. Last week, he traveled to Singapore to bring some machines for his new factory. He met many people there. He stayed in Singapore for five days in a hotel. People there were very helpful. He came back by plane.

General Exercises on Lesson 2

"Man-made resources"

There are two kinds of resources: nature resources and man-made resources. Both of them are important. Man-made resources are materials or things that humans have made. Plastic bottles and cotton clothes are example of man-made resources.

General Exercises on Lesson 4

"Al-Azhar Park"

Al-Azhar Park is an interesting place to visit. I went there with my family. My mom prepared our picnic. I played football with my brother. We took some beautiful photos in the amazing green areas. The park has some big trees. It was a beautiful day.

General Exercises on Lessons 5 & 6

"My perfect vacation"

I'm going on vacation. Next week, I'm traveling to the USA by plane. Today, I'm packing my suitcase. I know that there is often rain in the USA, so I'm taking my umbrella. It can also be cold there, so I'm packing a sweater. I love swimming and I asked my friend in the USA if there was a place I could swim in.

Test on Unit (12)

"A special trip"

On Monday, we arrived in Amman. The flight landed at 4 o'clock in the afternoon. It was about 26 degrees and I was surprised that it was so warm in October. We went to our hotel and checked in. Our room was very comfortable. Later that evening, we had dinner at the Memphis restaurant in the city center.

This page was left intentionally blank for cut and stick activity

هذه الصفحة تركت فارغة عمدًا
لنشاط القص واللصق.